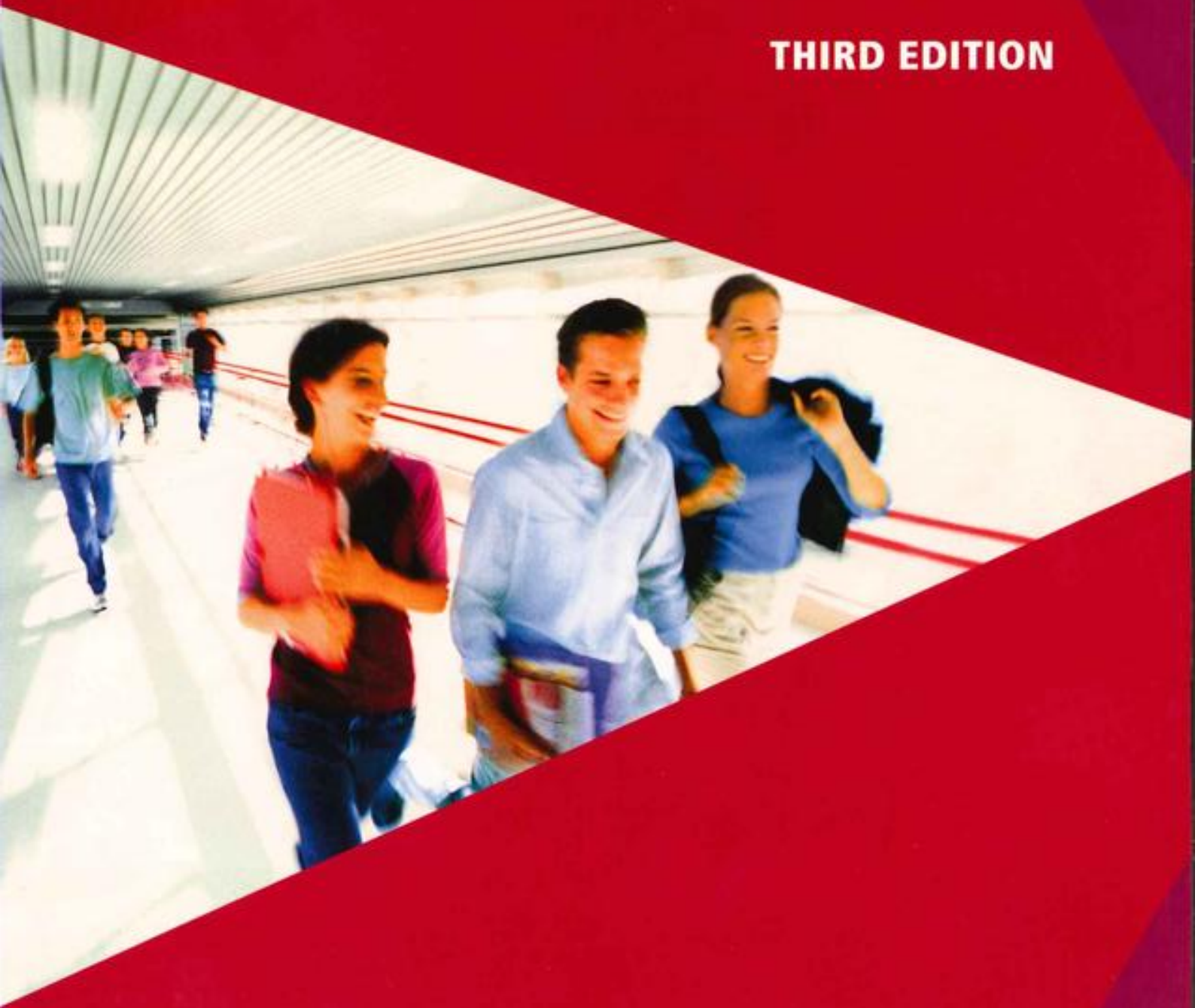
with Oxford Online Skills Program

1

AMERICAN Headway

Proven success beyond the classroom

THIRD EDITION



Liz and John Soars

OXFORD

1

AMERICAN Headway

Proven success beyond the classroom

THIRD EDITION

Liz and John Soars

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Scope and Sequence LANGUAGE INPUT

UNIT	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	EVERYDAY ENGLISH
1 You and me p. 2	**Verb *to be*** *am/is/are* *I'm from Chicago.* p. 2 **Possessive adjectives** *my/your* p. 2 *his/her* p. 3 **Verbs *have/go/live/like*** *I have a brother.* *I live with my parents.* p. 4 **Possessive 's** *My sister's name …* p. 4	**Personal information** *email address, last name* p. 3 **Adjectives** *small, beautiful, easy* p. 6 **Opposite adjectives** *good/bad, hot/cold* p. 7 **The family** *husband, aunt, cousin* p. 8	**Everyday conversations** *Hi, Pete!* *Hello, Mrs. Brown.* *See you later!* *Can I have a coffee, please?* *Nice to meet you.* p. 9
2 A good job! p. 10	**Simple Present (1)** *he/she/it* *He comes from …* *She teaches …* p. 10 **Questions and negatives** *What does he do?* *He doesn't live …* p. 11	**Verbs** *come, work, earn, go, play* p. 11 **Jobs** *nurse, hairstylist, lawyer* *He designs buildings.* p. 16	**What time is it?** *It's five o'clock.* *It's five thirty.* *It's twenty after five.* *It's almost three o'clock.* p. 17
3 Work hard, play hard! p. 18	**Simple Present (2)** *I/you/we/they* *I love singing.* p. 18 *Do you relax on weekends?* *I don't work.* p. 19 **Adverbs of frequency** *always, usually, often, never* p. 19	**Verbs** *cook, eat, finish, sing, stay* p. 18 **In my free time** *play golf, dance, go to the gym* p. 20 **My perfect weekend** *watch TV, go shopping* p. 22	**Social expressions (1)** *I'm sorry I'm late.* *What's the matter?* *Can I/you …?* *What does … mean?* *Excuse me!* p. 25
4 Somewhere to live p. 26	***There is/are*** *There's a big living room.* p. 26 ***some/any/a lot of*** *She has some plates.* *There aren't any glasses.* *She has a lot of clothes.* p. 28 ***this/that/these/those*** *I like that picture.* *How much are these?* p. 28	**Things in the house** *sofa, stove* p. 26 **Things on the street** *post office, bench* p. 27 **Rooms and household goods** *living room, bathroom* p. 26 *towels, teakettle, mugs* p. 28 **Adjectives for *good* and *bad*** *wonderful, great, awful* p. 32 **Adverb + adjective** *very big, really big* p. 32	**Numbers** *45, 250* *1½, 6.8* *917-555-6678* p. 33 **Prices** *$1.50* *$19.99* *€12* p. 33
5 Super me! p. 34	***can/can't*** *She can ski.* *I can't speak Spanish.* p. 34 **Adverbs** *pretty well, not at all* *I can draw very well.* p. 35 ***was/were/could*** *Where were you yesterday?* *I could ski when I was five.* p. 36 ***was born*** *He was born in 2008.* p. 37	**Words that go together** Noun + noun: *handbag, post office* Verb + noun: *play the guitar* p. 40 **Prepositions** *listen to music, come with me* p. 40	**Polite requests** *Can I have …?* *Can you open …?* *Could I ask you …?* *Could you tell me …?* *Sure.* *Sorry.* p. 41
6 Life's ups and downs p. 42	**Simple Past (1)** Regular *worked, learned, studied* p. 42 Irregular *began, came, had, met* p. 44 **Time expressions** *last night, yesterday morning* p. 45	**Regular verbs** *travel, return, move* p. 43 **Irregular verbs** *caught, lost, left, won* p. 44 **Describing feelings** *bored, excited, worried* p. 48 **Describing things** *interesting, exciting* p. 48	**What's the date?** *first, second, third* *April third* *2001 – two thousand one* *2015 – twenty fifteen* p. 49

SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

READING	SPEAKING	LISTENING	WRITING
A student's blog *Amanda's blog* A student's experiences of school and family in Boston, USA p. 6	**Introducing yourself** *My last name is …* *I'm 18 years old.* p. 3	**Personal information** *Where's he from?* p. 3 **Amanda's blog** p. 6 Five conversations in Amanda's day p. 7	**You and your life** *I'm from …* *I go to …* p. 5 **A blog** Keeping an online journal **Writing a blog** p. 100
A really good job *Babur Ali – He's 16 years old and a head teacher!* A boy from India teaches younger children p. 14	**The dancer and the DJ** *She's a ballet dancer.* *She lives in …* *She speaks …* p. 12 **Role play** A student and a journalist p. 14	**Jobs** People and their jobs *He's a pilot.* *She teaches French and Spanish.* p. 16 Conversations about jobs *What does he do?* *He works for …* p. 16	**Improving style** Using pronouns *I like him.* *She doesn't like it.* **Rewriting a text** p. 101
Perfect weekends *My perfect weekend* Jamie Cullum and Bobbi Brown describe what they like doing p. 22	**Role play** Interviewing Claire Higgins p. 19 **Questionnaire** Your work-life balance p. 24	**In my free time** Free-time activities People talk about what they like doing in their free time p. 21	**Filling out forms** An application form – giving personal information *Date of birth* *Signature* p. 102
America's most famous address *Inside the White House* A description of the building and what happens there p. 30	**Information gap** Describing an apartment p. 27 **What's in your bag?** *There's a wallet.* *Are there any keys?* p. 29 **Discussion** Famous buildings p. 31	**What's in your bag?** *She has a phone.* p. 29 **Five conversations** What or who is it? How do they describe it? p. 32	**Describing your home** Linking words *and, so, but, because* **Writing a description of your home** p. 103
A talented family *A passion for success* The violinist Nicola Benedetti and her father p. 38	**What can you do?** *I can cook pretty well.* p. 35 **Talking about you** *I was born in …* *I could walk when I was …* p. 37 **Discussion** Who are you close to in your family? p. 38	**Child prodigies** A pianist and an artist Pablo Picasso p. 37 **Conversations** *You send a lot of text messages.* *The post office is near the traffic lights.* p. 40	**A formal email** Applying for a job *I am interested in the job of …* **Writing an email** p. 104
The meaning of life *The businessman and the fisherman* How to find happiness p. 46	**Talking about a student** *His mother was born in …* *He started school …* p. 44 **Talking about you** *I watched TV last night.* *When did you last …?* p. 45	**Interview** Ben Way, dotcom millionaire p. 44 **Conversations** *Did you enjoy the movie?* *No, it was boring.* p. 48	**A biography** Combining sentences *However, when, until* **Writing a biography** p. 105

LANGUAGE INPUT

UNIT	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	EVERYDAY ENGLISH
7 Dates to remember p. 50	**Simple Past (2)** *He sold the first car in 1908.* p. 50 **Questions** *How many/When/Why ...* p. 51 **Negatives** *We didn't have computers.* p. 51 **Time expressions** *in 1903/50 years ago/at 9:00/on Monday* p. 52	**Adverbs** *quickly, carefully, badly* *fast, hard, well* *fortunately, immediately* p. 56	**Special occasions** *birthday, Mother's Day* *Happy New Year!* *Congratulations!* p. 57
8 Eat in or out? p. 58	**Count and noncount nouns** *tea/cheese/apples/eggs* p. 58 *some tomatoes/some fruit* p. 59 ***I like ... and I'd like ...*** *I like pasta.* *I'd like a salad.* p. 59 ***some/any*** *There are some onions.* *We don't have many potatoes.* p. 61 ***How much...?/How many...?*** *How many onions?* *How much butter?* p. 61	**Food and drink** *yogurt, chocolate, peas, juice, soda, milk* p. 58 *salad, spaghetti, tap water, bottled water* p. 59 *ground beef, oil* p. 60 **Verbs** *chop, fry, boil, mix* p. 61 **Daily needs** *Band-Aids, shampoo, batteries, light bulb* p. 64	**Shopping on Main Street** *What kind do you need?* *Six is too many.* *One is enough.* *Small or large?* *$36 is too much.* p. 65 **Sounding polite** *I'd like a coffee, please.* *I want a latte.* p. 65
9 City living p. 66	**Comparative adjectives** *bigger, more romantic, better, worse* p. 66 **Superlative adjectives** *best, most popular, busiest* p. 68	**Adjectives** *tall, wet, warm, polite* p. 66 *safe, dangerous* p. 67 **Markets** *gift shop, seafood, brownies* p. 68 **City and small town** *square, office building, cottage, farm, path* p. 72	**Directions** Prepositions – *over, along, around, through* p. 73 *Can you tell me how to get to ...?* *Is there a ... near here?* *Go through the traffic circle.* *Follow the signs to ...* p. 73
10 Where on earth are you? p. 74	***in/at/on* for places** *in bed/on vacation/at work* p. 74 **Present Continuous** *I'm cooking.* *What are you doing?* p. 74 **Simple Present or Present Continuous?** *He works ...* *He's working ...* p. 76 ***something/nothing ...*** *somebody/nobody* *everywhere/anything* p. 77	**Describing people** *pretty, good-looking, handsome* *blond hair* *brown/blue eyes* p. 80 **Clothes** *a dress, a suit, a shirt* p. 80	**Social expressions (2)** *Can I help you?/No, I'm just looking.* *I'm afraid I can't ...* *That's too bad.* p. 81
11 Going far p. 82	***going to* future** *I'm going to be a race-car driver.* p. 82 **Infinitive of purpose** *We're going to Egypt to see the pyramids.* p. 85	**Verbs** *drop, sneeze, win, fall* p. 84 **What's the weather like?** *sunny, rainy, cloudy* *warm, cool, dry* p. 88	**Making suggestions** *What should we do?* *Let's ...* *Why don't we ...?* *I'll get my coat.* p. 89
12 Never ever! p. 90	**Present Perfect** *I've been to Hong Kong.* *I haven't traveled much.* p. 90 ***ever* and *never*** *Have you ever been/lived ...?* p. 91 ***yet* and *just*** *They haven't finished yet.* *She just emailed back.* p. 92 **Tense review** *Present/past/future tenses* p. 93	**Past participles** *flown, given, eaten* p. 91 ***take* and *get*** *take place/take off/take an exam* *get married/get along with/get to work* p. 96 **Transportation and travel** *flight, round-trip ticket, track, gate* p. 97	**Transportation and travel** *bus/train/plane* *A round-trip ticket to Washington, DC, please.* *Where can I get the 360?* *How many carry-on bags do you have?* p. 97
Audio Scripts p. 114	Grammar Reference p. 130	Word List p. 139	Pairwork Student A p. 145

SKILLS DEVELOPMENT

READING	SPEAKING	LISTENING	WRITING
Sixty years of flight *Planes to rockets in sixty years* Just 60 years separate the first long flight from the landing on the moon p. 54	**Information gap** Bill's life p. 52 **Talking about my life** Life stories p. 53 **Telling a story** Retelling a story p. 56	**Talking about my life** Angela's life p. 53 **Telling a story** Noises in the night p. 56	**Telling a story** Using time expressions *during, before, between, after* **Researching and writing about a historical character** p. 106
Everybody likes a sandwich! *The history of the sandwich* Who were the first to make sandwiches? p. 62	**Your favorite recipe** What ingredients do you need? p. 61 Your favorite sandwich p. 63	**What's your favorite sandwich?** Five people talk about their favorites p. 63	**Two emails** Informal and more formal *Hi Evan,* *Dear Mr. and Mrs. Owen,* **Writing an informal email** p. 108
Megacities *High-speed Tokyo, Mumbai – a city of extremes,* and *Multicultural Mexico City* Three huge cities – facts and attractions p. 70	**Comparing cities** Two big cities p. 67 *Dubai is much more modern.* p. 67 A megacity p. 70	**People talk about where they live** Rob talks about living in Paris. p. 67 Makiko talks about Tokyo. Vimahl talks about Mumbai. Lourdes talks about Mexico City. p. 70	**Describing a place** Relative pronouns *that, who, where* *the book that …* *the girl who …* **Writing about a city** p. 110
The International Space Station *Living in space* The ISS is orbiting Earth right now p. 78	**Project** Who is on the ISS? p. 78 **Describing people** Describing someone in the room/ in the news p. 80	**Who's who?** Who's who at the party? p. 76 **Interview** Interview with an astronaut p. 78 **Describing people** Descriptions of people p. 80	**Comparing and contrasting** Linking words *but, however, although* *First of all …* **Comparing people you know** p. 111
Meet Zoë Romano *Dream it, then do it* A young woman runs the Tour de France p. 86	**Talking about places** *Why did you go there?* p. 85 **Role play** Interviewing Zoë p. 86	**We're off to see the world!** Two people talk about their travel plans p. 85 **What's the weather like?** A weather forecast p. 88	**Describing a vacation** Writing a postcard *We're having a really wonderful time* **Writing a vacation postcard** p. 112
The Glastonbury festival *I've been to Glastonbury!* The world's biggest open-air music festival p. 94	**Talking about you** *Have you ever …?* p. 92 Music festivals p. 95	**The Glastonbury festival** People's experiences of a music festival p. 95	**A poem** Choosing the right word *Why did you leave?* **Writing poetry** p. 113

Pairwork Student B p. 148 Extra Materials p. 151 Irregular Verbs/Verb Patterns p. 152 Phonetic Symbols p. 153

1 You and me

am/is/are • *my/your/his/her* • Verbs – *have/go/live/like* • Possessive 's
Word groups • Everyday conversations

STARTER

1 CD1 2 Say the alphabet around the class.

A, B, C, D, E, F ...

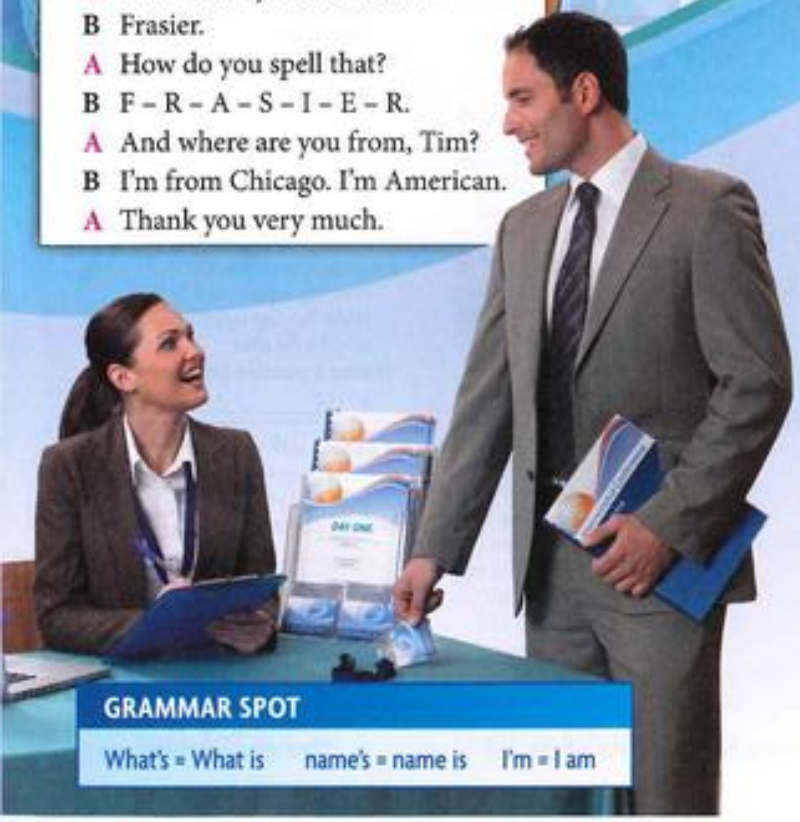
2 Stand up in alphabetical order. Introduce yourself to the class.

HELLO!

am/is/are – my/your

1 CD1 3 Read and listen. Practice the conversation.

A Hello. What's your first name?
B My name's Tim.
A And what's your last name?
B Frasier.
A How do you spell that?
B F – R – A – S – I – E – R.
A And where are you from, Tim?
B I'm from Chicago. I'm American.
A Thank you very much.



GRAMMAR SPOT

What's = What is name's = name is I'm = I am

2 Complete the conversation. CD1 4 Listen and check.

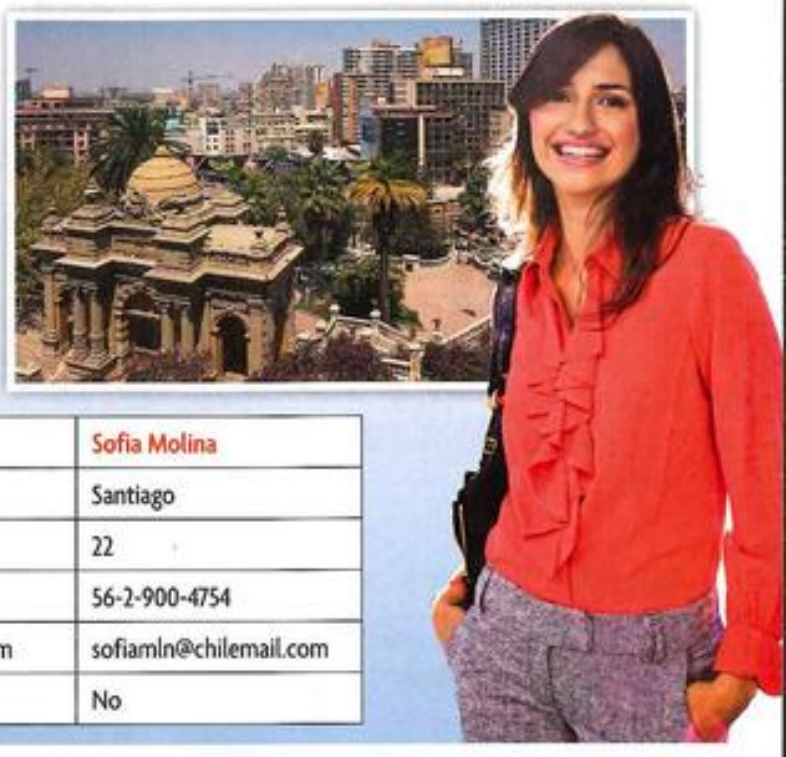
C Hello. My _name's_ Carla. What's _____ name?
M Mike.
C _____ are you from, Mike?
M _____ from Miami. Where _____ you from?
C _____ _____ Miami, too!
M Oh! Nice to meet you!

3 Stand up! Say hello to the other students.

PERSONAL INFORMATION

he/she – his/her

1 Look at the information about Tim and Sofia.



name	Tim Frasier	Sofia Molina
city	Chicago	Santiago
age	30	22
phone number	312-555-0749	56-2-900-4754
email address	tfrasier@mail.com	sofiamln@chilemail.com
married?	No	No

email addresses: @ = at . = dot

2 CD1 5 Listen and complete the questions about Tim.

1 What's __his__ last name? *Frasier*
2 _____ his first name? *Tim*
3 Where _____ he from? *Chicago*
4 How old _____ he? *30*
5 What's _____ phone number? *312-555-0749*
6 _____ _____ email address? *tfrasier@mail.com*
7 Is _____ married? *No, he isn't.*

Practice the questions and answers with a partner.

3 CD1 6 Listen and complete the questions about Sofia.

1 What's __her__ last name?
2 What's _____ first name?
3 Where _____ she from?
4 How old _____ _____?
5 What's _____ phone number?
6 _____ _____ email address?
7 _____ _____ married?

Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the chart of the verb *to be*.

Affirmative	Negative
I am = I'm	I __'m not__
you are = you're	you __aren't__
he is = he's	he _____
she is = she's	she _____

2 Write the possessive adjectives.

Pronouns	Possessive adjectives
I	__my__
you	_____
he	_____
she	__her__

▶▶ Grammar Reference 1.1–1.2 p. 130

Talking about you

4 Ask and answer questions with a partner.

- What's your last name?
- What's your first name?
- How do you spell your last name?
- How old are you?
- What's your phone number?
- What's your email address?
- Are you married? *Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.*

Yes, I am. NOT ~~Yes, I'm.~~

NICK'S FAMILY

Verbs – *have/go/live/like*

1 CD1 7 Listen to and read about Nick Wilson's life and family.

2 Complete the sentences about Nick.

1 I _____ to Northeastern University.
2 I _____ a brother and a sister.
3 I _____ with my parents in a house in Boston.
4 My family really _____ Lily!

CD1 8 Listen and check.

3 Complete the sentences about you.

I go to ...	I have ...
I live with ...	I really like ...

Tell a partner.

Possessive 's

4 Read the Grammar Spot. Find more examples of 's in the text. Are they *is* or possession?

GRAMMAR SPOT

Look at the sentences.

My name's Nick. 's = is
My brother's name is Matt. 's = possession = *his name*

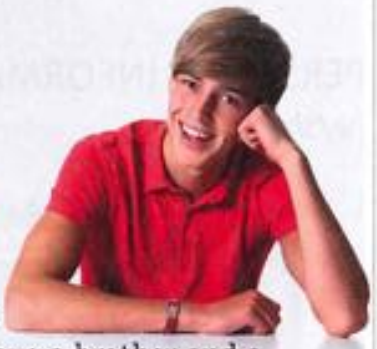
▶▶ Grammar Reference 1.3 p. 130

5 Answer the questions.

1 Who's Matt? *He's Nick's brother.*
2 Who's Rosie? Peter? Helen? Lily?
3 What's his father's job? *He's a ...*
4 What's his mother's job?

Me and Lily

My name's
Nick Wilson,
and I'm from Boston.



I'm 19 years old, and I'm a student. I go to Northeastern University. I have a brother and a sister. My brother's name is Matt. He's 16, and he's in high school. My sister's name is Rosie. She's 23, and she's married.

I live with my parents and my brother in a house in Boston. My father, Peter, is a salesperson, and my mother, Helen, is a teacher. I'm not married, but I have a girlfriend. Her name's Lily. She's great! My family really likes her!

Me with Mom and Dad

Matt

Rosie

PRACTICE

be – am, is, are

1 Complete the sentences with the verb *to be*.

1 Where _____ you from?
2 "_____ you from Boston?" "Yes, I _____."
3 "How old _____ you?" "I _____ 15."
4 "_____ your sisters married?" "No, they _____."
5 I like you. You _____ my friend.

6 Marc _____ from the US, he's from Canada.
7 "_____ your mother a doctor?" "No, she _____."
8 I _____ Brazilian. I'm Costa Rican.

CD1 9 Listen and check.

2 What is 's, *is* or possession?

1 My name's Juan. 's = is
2 My sister's friend isn't married. 's = possession
3 Sonia's Mexican.
4 She's a teacher.
5 Her brother's wife isn't English.
6 My brother's children are beautiful.

Pronunciation

3 CD1 10 Listen and choose the sentence you hear.

1 a ☐ He's from Mexico.
  b ☐ She's from Mexico.
2 a ☐ What's his name?
  b ☐ What's her name?
3 a ☐ Your English is good.
  b ☐ You're English. Good.
4 a ☐ Where's she from?
  b ☐ Where's he from?
5 a ☐ His teacher is from Canada.
  b ☐ He's a teacher from Canada.
6 a ☐ You aren't American.
  b ☐ We aren't American.

Spelling

4 CD1 11 Listen and complete the names and email addresses.

Names

1 V _ _ E _ _ A
2 J _ S _ _ _ B _ _ E _
3 K _ T _ _ M _ _ _ _ _ _ _ S

Email addresses

4 g. _____ 8@wahoo _____
5 zac _____ @mail.co _____

Talking about you

5 Make true sentences about you with the verb *to be*.

1 I 'm not at home.
2 We _____ in class.
3 We _____ in a café.
4 It _____ Monday today.
5 My teacher's name _____ Robert.
6 My mother and father _____ at work.
7 I _____ married.
8 My grandmother _____ seventy-five years old.

Read your sentences to your partner.

Writing

6 Write about you and your life.
Read it aloud to the rest of the class.

READING AND LISTENING

A student's blog

1 Look at the photos of Boston. What can you see? What do you know about Boston?

2 Work with a partner. Complete the sentences with adjectives from the box.

big	small	nice	beautiful
expensive	interesting	difficult	easy
friendly	cold	sunny	

1 Boston is/isn't a/an _____ city.
2 The people are/aren't _____.
3 The weather is/isn't _____.
4 English is/isn't a/an _____ language.

Discuss your ideas with the class.

3 CD1 12 Amanda is a student in Boston. Read and listen to her blog. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1 Amanda is from Brazil. T
2 She's in New York. F *She isn't in New York. She's in Boston.*
3 Peter and Helen have two sons.
4 She's in a small school.
5 Her school is downtown.
6 The students in her class are all from Asia.
7 Rosie is Amanda's teacher.
8 The Museum of Fine Arts is expensive for students.
9 The subway is difficult to use.
10 The coffee is good.

4 Complete the questions about Amanda. Ask and answer them with your partner.

1 Where's Amanda from? *Brazil.*
2 _____ her school? *In a fun part of Boston.*
3 What's _____ name? *Charlotte.*
4 _____ name? *Wilson.*
5 _____ their _____? *In Boston.*
6 How _____ the two brothers? *Matt's 16 and Nick's 19.*
7 _____ OK? *Yes, it is. It's cold and sunny.*

CD1 13 Listen, check, and practice.

5 Look at the photos in Amanda's blog. What/Who can you see?

MY BOSTON FAMILY

MY SCHOOL

BOSTON

AMANDA'S BLOG

DAY 1: Welcome to my blog! It's in English!!

POSTED ON APRIL 6TH BY AMANDA

Hello! I'm a Brazilian student. I'm in Boston, Massachusetts in the United States! I'm here to learn English.
The Wilsons are my American family. Peter (the husband) and Helen (the wife) have three children: Matt, 16, Nick, 19, and Rosie, 23. Rosie's married. They're very friendly, but they speak very fast! It's difficult to understand them.

DAY 3: My first day at school!

POSTED ON APRIL 8TH BY AMANDA

Today is my first English class at Boston University. It's a big school in a fun part of the city. It's near a lot of shops, cafés, and theaters. It's great!
My class is very international! The students are from Mexico, Japan, Turkey, Argentina, Korea, and China. Our teacher's name is Charlotte. She's very young and she's very nice. I really like her. She's a good teacher.

DAY 10: I love Boston!!

POSTED ON APRIL 15TH BY AMANDA

Hello again! It's great here. I love Boston! It's really interesting. I like shopping, but it's very expensive. I go to the parks. They are really beautiful. And I go to museums and galleries. The Museum of Fine Arts is free for college students! I go by bus or by subway – it's very easy.
The weather's OK, cold but sunny. The food is OK, too! And the coffee is great! There are a lot of coffee shops in Boston! Check out my photos!

Listening

6 CD1 14 Listen to five conversations. Complete the chart.

	Where's Amanda?	Who is she with?
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		

Vocabulary work

7 What is the opposite adjective?

1 a *good* student — a __bad__ teacher
2 a *big* city — a _____ town
3 a *hot* day — _____ weather
4 *terrible* coffee — a _____ meal
5 a *cheap* café — an _____ restaurant
6 an *old* man — a _____ girl
7 a *slow* bus — a _____ car
8 an *easy* exercise — _____ homework

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the verb *to be*.

I __am__
you _____
he _____
she _____
it _____
we __are__
they _____

2 Complete the possessive adjectives.

I	__my__
you	_____
he	_____
she	_____
we	_____
they	__their__

▶▶ Grammar Reference 1.1–1.2 p. 130

▶▶ WRITING A blog *p. 100*

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

The family

1 Complete the diagram with words from the box.

mother	boyfriend	wife	son
niece	brother	aunt	grandmother

2 Complete the sentences.

1 My mother's father is my grandfather.
2 My father's mother is my _____.
3 My mother's sister is my _____.
4 My aunt's husband is my _____.
5 My sister's son is my _____.
6 My brother's daughter is my _____.

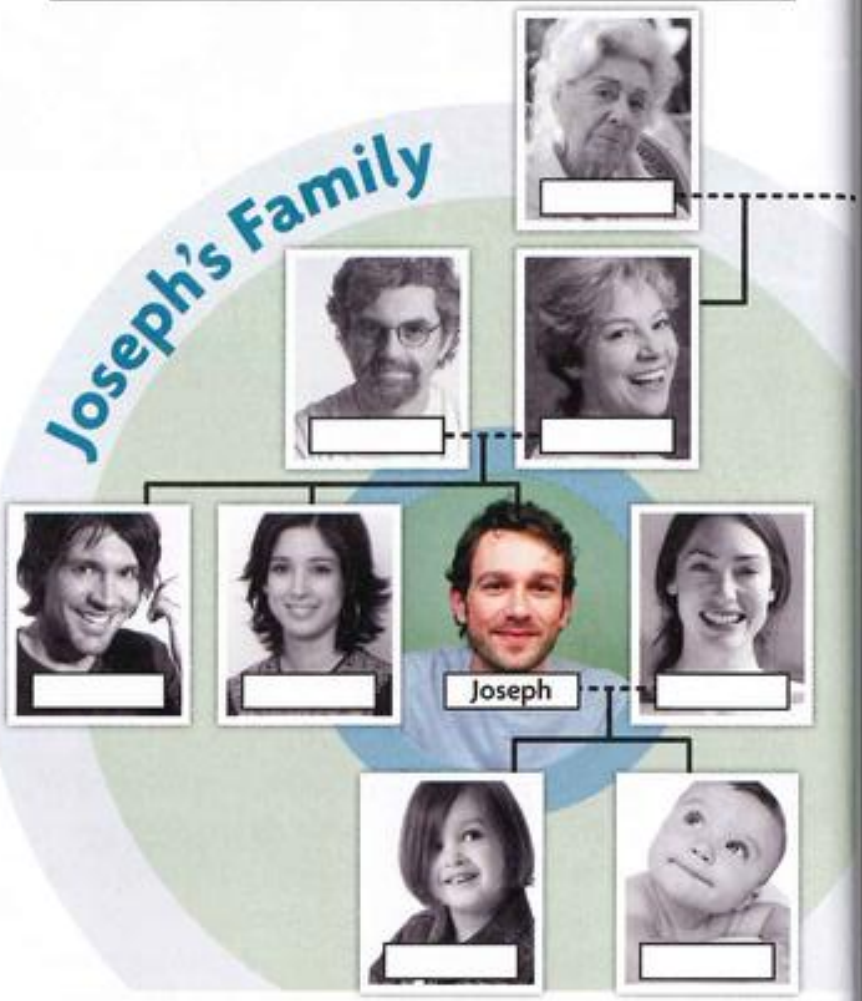
Use these words to complete sentences 7, 8, and 9.

cousins children parents

7 Your mother and father are your _____.
8 Your son and your daughter are your _____.
9 Your aunt's children are your _____.

3 CD1 15 Listen and write the names.

Richard Andrea Nancy Tom John Odile Marie Isabel



4 Write the names of some people in your family. Ask and answer questions with a partner.

Alberto Marta and Raquel Louis

Who's Alberto? He's my father.

Who are Marta and Raquel? They're my cousins.

Who's Louis? He's ...

5 Talk to your partner about your family.

My grandmother is 72. My grandfather is ...
They live ...
I like my aunt ... and ...
I have ... cousins ...

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Everyday conversations

1 Work with a partner. Make different conversations.

Student A			Student B			Student A	
Hi, Hello, Good morning,	Pete. Sally. Mr. Simpson. Mrs. Brown.	How are you?	Fine, Pretty good, All right, OK, Not bad,	thank you. thanks.	And you?	Fine, Pretty good, All right, OK, Not bad,	thanks. thank you.

2 CD1 16 Listen and compare. Practice again.

3 Look at the pictures. Complete the conversations.

1

-Bye- later a good day

A _Bye_, Mom! It's time for school.

B Goodbye, honey. Have _____!

A Thanks. See you _____.

2

Good morning of course Can

C Good morning!

D _____! _____ I have a coffee, an espresso, please?

C Yes, _____. Anything else?

D No, thank you.

3

just Good afternoon help

E _____! Can I _____ you?

F No, thank you. We're _____ looking.

E That's OK.

4

Pleased to meet This is

G Frank. _____ Gina. She's from our New York office.

H Hello, Gina. Nice _____ you.

I Hello, Frank. _____ to meet you, too.

5

a good weekend Bye to you

J Thank goodness it's Friday! _____, Ian.

K Bye, Derek. Have _____.

J Thanks. Same _____.

K See you on Monday.

6

well See you

L Good night! Sleep _____!

M Good night! _____ in the morning.

CD1 17 Listen and check.

4 Work with a partner. Memorize the conversations. Stand up! Act out the conversations.

Oxford Online Skills Program
Log in for additional online learning

2 A good job!

Simple Present (1) – *he/she/it* • Questions and negatives
Jobs • What time is it?

STARTER

What are the jobs of the people in your family? Tell the class.

My father is a doctor. My mother's a ... My brother ...

TWO OUTDOOR JOBS

Simple Present – *he/she/it*

1 CD1 18 Listen to and read about Andrew Johnson and Claudia Luke. What are their jobs? Where do they work?

2 Select all the verbs in the text: *is, comes, ...*
What is the last letter of these verbs?

Pronunciation

3 CD1 19 Listen and complete the chart. Practice saying the verbs.

/s/	/z/	/ɪz/
likes	comes	teaches

4 Complete the sentences.

1 Andrew is an engineer. Claudia _____ a zoologist.
2 She comes from the US. He _____ from New Zealand.
3 He lives in Scotland. She _____ in California.
4 She works in the mountains. He _____ on an oil rig.
5 He earns £200 a day. She _____ $75,000 a year.
6 She likes her job, and he _____ his job, too.
7 He _____ to the gym in his free time. She _____ her dog. Her dog's name _____ Luna.
8 She _____ married. Her husband's name _____ Chris. Andrew _____ married.

CD1 20 Listen and check. Read the sentences aloud.

ENGINEER

Andrew Johnson

Andrew, 30, is an engineer. He comes from New Zealand, but now he lives in Scotland. He works on an oil rig 440 km from the coast of Aberdeen. He works 12 hours a day for two weeks, and then he has two weeks off. He earns £200 (about $330) a day. In his free time he goes to the gym and plays pool. He isn't married.

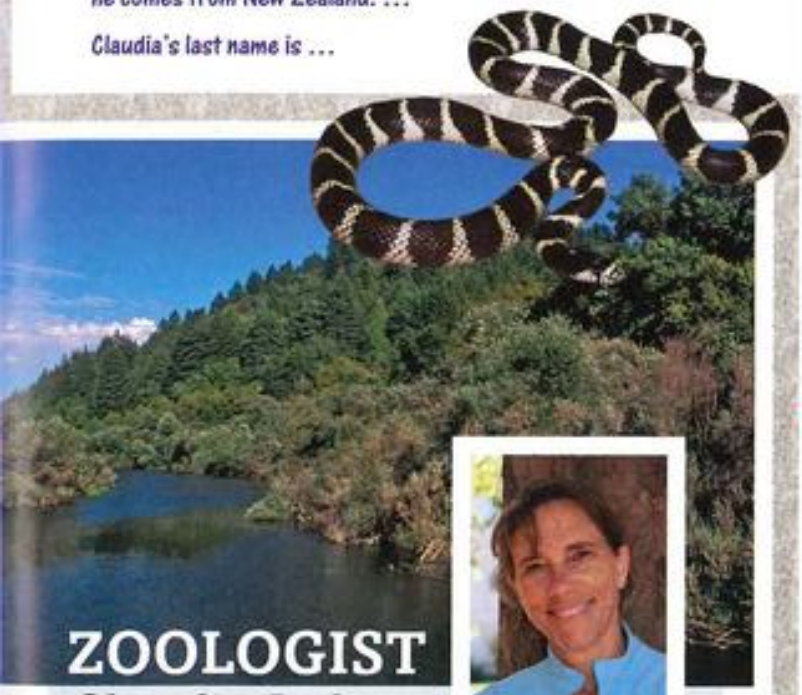
5 Complete the chart about Andrew and Claudia.

	Andrew	Claudia
last name		
age		
country		
job		
salary		
free time		
married?		

6 Close your books. What do you remember about Andrew and Claudia? Talk about them with a partner.

Andrew's last name is Johnson. He's 30 and he comes from New Zealand. ...

Claudia's last name is ...



ZOOLOGIST

Claudia Luke

Claudia, 54, is American. She lives in California and she's a zoologist. She is the director of three research stations at Sonoma State University where she teaches and researches. Claudia studies animals such as snakes and mice in their natural environment. She loves her job and especially likes working in the mountains on the coast of California. Claudia is married to Chris. Chris is an oceanographer so he studies the oceans. In her free time she goes cycling and walks her dog, Luna. She earns about $75,000 a year.

WHAT DOES HE DO?

Questions and negatives

1 CD1 21 Read and listen. Complete the sentences about Andrew. Practice them with a partner.

1 What does Andrew do? (= What's his job?) *He's an* _____.
2 Where does he come from? *New* _____.
3 Does he live in Scotland? _____, *he does.*
4 Does he live in New Zealand? _____, *he doesn't.*
5 He _____ married. He doesn't have any children.

GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

1 Complete these sentences with the correct form of *live*.

Affirmative

He _____ in Scotland.

Negative

He _____ _____ in New Zealand.

Question

Where _____ he _____? In Scotland.

2 CD1 22 Listen. Practice the pronunciation of *does* and *doesn't*.

/dəz/ /dʌz/ /dʌznt/

Does he play soccer? Yes, he **does**./No, he **doesn't**.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 2.1–2.2 p. 131

2 Complete the questions and answers about Andrew.

1 "Where *does* Andrew *work*?"
"On an oil rig."
2 "_____ he work hard?"
"Yes, he _____."
3 "How much _____ he earn?"
"$ _____ a day."
4 "What _____ he do in his free time?"
"He _____ and he _____."
5 "_____ he like his job?"
"Yes, he _____."
6 "_____ he have a dog?"
"No, he _____."

CD1 23 Listen and check. Ask and answer questions about Andrew with a partner.

3 Ask and answer questions about Claudia.

PRACTICE

The dancer and the DJ

1 Look at the photos of Chiaki Yasukawa /ˈtʃɪakɪ yasukawɑ/ and David Guetta /ˈgetə/. What do you know about them?

2 Read the information about them. Talk to a partner. *Chiaki's a ballet dancer and David's a DJ. She comes from ...*

Chiaki Yasukawa *Ballet dancer*

Job	ballet dancer
Country	Osaka, Japan
Home now	Orlando, Florida, US.
Place of work	Orlando
Languages	Japanese, English, and French
Family	married to Sae-heng Lang one daughter, Anly
Free time	goes to the beach and fishes

David Guetta DJ SUPERSTAR

Job	DJ (disc jockey)
Country	France
Home now	Paris
Place of work	all over the world: Ibiza, Miami, Mauritius
Languages	French and English
Family	a son, Tim-Elvis, and a daughter, Angie
Free time	writes songs and likes playing music for his friends

Asking questions

3 Complete the questions about Chiaki or David. Ask and answer them with your partner.

What does Chiaki do? — *She's a ballet dancer.*

- What ... do?
- Where ... live now?
- ... speak French?
- What ... her/his children's names?
- Where ... come from?
- Where ... work?
- How many children ...?
- What ... in her/his free time?

Stress and intonation

4 CD1 24 Listen and respond to eight sentences about Chiaki and David. Correct the wrong sentences.

Chiaki comes from Osaka. — *Yes, that's right.*

She lives in Japan. — *No, she doesn't. She lives ...*

CD1 25 Listen and check. Practice again.

Talking about family and friends

5 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the correct form.

1 My husband _comes_ (come) from Korea.
2 My grandmother _____ (live) in the next town.
3 My mother _____ (love) reading.
4 My father _____ (travel) a lot for his job.
5 My sister _____ (speak) Spanish very well. She _____ (want) to learn Chinese, too.
6 My little brother _____ (watch) TV a lot.
7 My friend Tom _____ (write) a blog.

6 Match the questions to the sentences in exercise 5 to continue the conversations.

a ☐ Does she want to be an interpreter?
b [1] Where exactly in Korea?
c ☐ Does she visit you often?
d ☐ What does he write about?
e ☐ What does she read?
f ☐ Where does he go?
g ☐ What does he like watching?

7 CD1 26 Listen and check. What extra information do you hear?

Listening

8 CD1 27 Listen to five conversations. What are they about?

9 CD1 27 Listen again. For each conversation, write some of the verbs you hear.

1 do, _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____

10 Write the name of a friend or relative. Ask and answer questions with your partner.

11 CD1 28 Listen and choose the sentence you hear.

1 a ☐ He likes his job.
  b ☐ She likes her job.
2 a ☐ She loves walking.
  b ☐ She loves working.
3 a ☐ He's married.
  b ☐ He isn't married.
4 a ☐ Does she have three children?
  b ☐ Does he have three children?
5 a ☐ What does he do?
  b ☐ Where does he go?

▶▶ WRITING CD1 29 Improving style p. 101

READING AND SPEAKING

A really good job

1 Look at the pictures. Read these sentences about Babur Ali. Choose what you think is true.

1 Babur gets up at *5 a.m. / 8 a.m.*
2 He helps his *mother in the house / father at work.*
3 He goes to school by *bus / car.*
4 He studies hard until *1 p.m. / 4 p.m.*
5 He begins *his homework / the classes* at 5 p.m.
6 He *likes / doesn't like* his work.
7 He *speaks / doesn't speak* English.
8 He *wants / doesn't want* to go to college.

2 Read the first paragraph about Babur. Ask and answer the questions with a partner.

1 Where does Babur come from?
2 Where does he live?
3 Does his village have a school?
4 Why is he lucky? **Because ...**
5 How much is the school that Babur goes to?
6 What does he teach the children at his own school?
7 Are all the classes outdoors?
8 What is the name of Babur's school? Is it free?

3 Read about Babur's *Busy days.* Ask and answer questions about the times in Babur's day.

What time does he get up? — **At 5 o'clock.**

4 Read about *Babur's ambitions.* Correct the sentences.

1 The school has 60 students.
It doesn't have 60 students. It has ...
2 It has five teachers.
3 Babur wants to stop teaching.
4 He wants to be a doctor.

5 Look back at exercise 1. Were your answers correct?

Role play – An interview

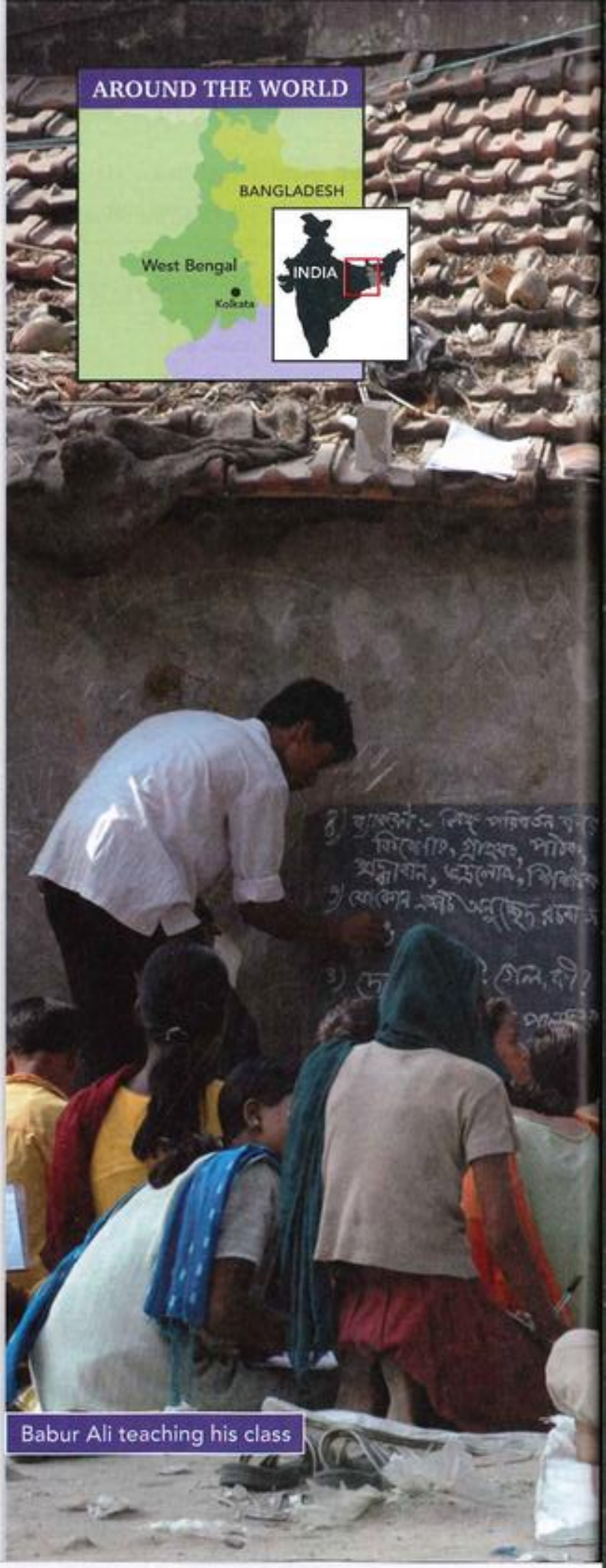
6 Work with a partner. Complete the questions.

1 How many students ...?
2 How many teachers ...?
3 What time ... start/finish?
4 How much is ...?
5 ... your teacher's name?
6 ... a good teacher?
7 What ... teach?
8 ... he work hard?

Student A
You are a journalist. Ask the questions.

Student B
You are one of Babur's students.
Answer the questions.

CD1 30 Listen and compare.



Babur Ali teaching his class

Babur Ali

"I love teaching. I am never tired."

He's 16 years old and a head teacher!

Babur Ali comes from West Bengal in India. He is 16 years old and lives in the small village of Bhabta. His village doesn't have a school, but Babur is lucky because he goes to a private school in the next village. His school costs 1,000 rupees, $17 a year. This is too expensive for many children in Babur's village, but they want to learn, so Babur teaches them everything that he learns. More and more children want to learn, so Babur's friends help him teach. The classes are in bamboo huts, but sometimes they sit outdoors. The school is free and now has a name, the Anand Shiksha Niketan School, and Babur is the head teacher.

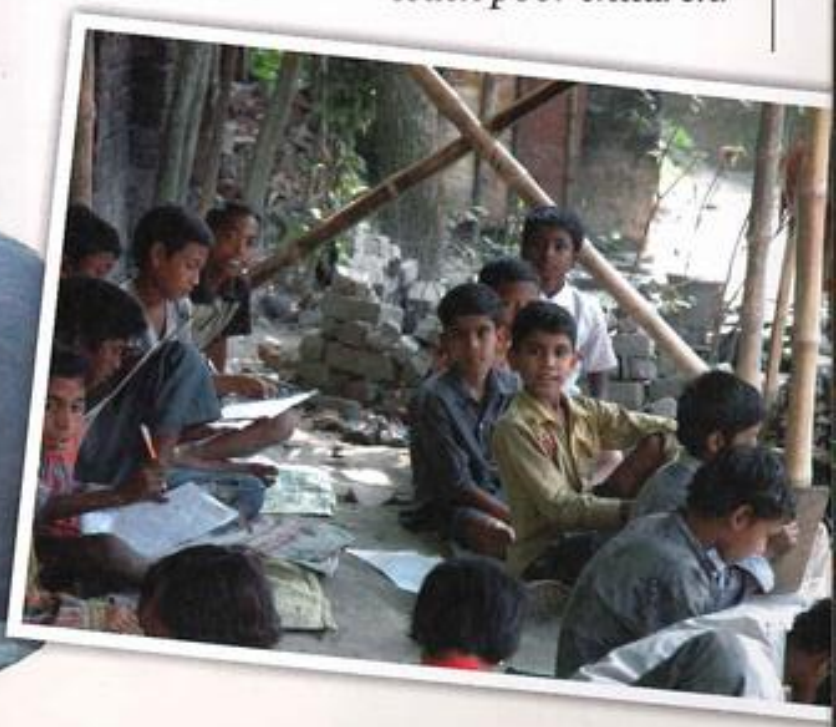
Busy days

Babur's days are very busy. He has no free time. He gets up at 5 o'clock in the morning and helps his mother with the housework. At 8 o'clock he goes by bus to his school three miles away. He studies hard all day until 4:00 in the afternoon. Then he travels back to his village and at 5:00 he begins the classes. He teaches English, Bengali, history, and math until 8:00 in the evening. He says, "I love teaching. I am never tired."

Babur's ambitions

Now the school has 650 students and ten teachers. Babur wants to go to college, but he doesn't want to stop teaching. He says,

"I always want to teach poor children."



VOCABULARY AND LISTENING
Jobs

1 Match a picture with a job.

- ☐ architect
- ☐ nurse
- ☐ pilot
- ☐ dentist
- ☐ receptionist
- ☐ lawyer
- ☐ taxi driver
- ☐ hairstylist
- ☐ journalist
- ☐ accountant

2 Complete the sentences with a job.

1 She's a _____. She cuts hair.
2 He's a _____. He flies from LAX airport.
3 She's a _____. She works in a hotel.
4 He's an _____. He designs buildings.
5 She's a _____. She works for a family law firm.
6 He's a _____. He knows the streets of New York.
7 She's a _____. She writes news stories.
8 He's a _____. He takes care of people's teeth.
9 He's a _____. He works in the City Hospital.
10 She's an _____. She likes working with numbers.

CD1 31 Listen and check.

3 CD1 32 Listen. Complete the conversations with the jobs.

1 **A** What does your brother do?
B He's a _____. He writes for *USA Today*.
A Oh, that's a good newspaper.

2 **C** What does your father do?
D He's an _____. He works for a big firm in the city.
C And your mother? What does she do?
D She's a _____. She teaches French and Spanish.

3 **E** Does your sister work downtown?
F Yes, she does. She's a _____. She works at the Ritz Hotel.
E Oh, that's near where I work.

4 **G** Are you a _____?
H No, I'm not. I'm a _____.
G Oh, but I want to see a _____.

5 **I** I want to be a _____ when I'm big.
J I want to be a _____. They earn lots of money.
I _____ earn a lot too, *and* they travel the world.

Practice the conversations with a partner.

Speaking

4 Work with a partner. Have similar conversations about your friends and family.

What does your sister do? — She's a student.
Oh, what does she study? — Physics.
Where does ... ?

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

What time is it?

1 Look at the clocks. Write the times.

It's five o'clock. _____

It's five thirty. _____

It's quarter after five. _____

It's quarter to six. _____

It's five after five. _____

It's twenty after five. _____

It's twenty-five to six. _____

It's ten to six. _____

CD1 33 Listen and check. Practice saying the times. What time does your lesson end?

2 CD1 34 Listen. Look at the times.

3 With a partner, draw clocks on a piece of paper. Ask and answer about the time.

What time is it? — It's twenty after seven.

Can you tell me the time, please? — It's just after three.

4 CD1 35 Listen and complete the conversations. Practice them with a partner.

1 A Excuse me. Can you tell me the _____, please?
B Yes, of course. It's _____ after _____ o'clock.
A Thank you _____ much.

2 C _____ me. Can you _____ me the time, please?
D I'm _____. I don't have the time.
C Oh, that's OK.

3 E Excuse me. What time does the bus leave?
F At ten _____ ten.
E Thank you. What time is it now?
F It's _____ five after.
E Five after ten?!
F No, no, five after _____. You're OK. No need to hurry.

4 G When does this lesson _____?
H At four o'clock.
G Oh, no! It's only _____ after three!

Oxford Online Skills Program
Log in for additional online learning

3 Work hard, play hard!

Simple Present (2) – *I/you/we/they* • In my free time • Social expressions (1)

STARTER

1 What day is it today? Say the days of the week. Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday

2 Which days are the weekend? Which days are you busy?

I LIVE AND WORK IN NEW YORK

Simple Present – *I/you/we/they*

1 CD1 36 Look at the pictures of Claire Higgins. Close your books and listen to Claire. Where does she live? Is she 24, 32, or 42? What are her two jobs?

2 Read and complete the text with the correct verbs from the box.

cook	eat	have	finish	~~live~~	love
sing	stay	work	don't do	don't go	

CD1 36 Listen again and check. Read the text aloud.

Claire's two jobs

"Hi, I'm Claire Higgins. I'm 24 years old and I [1] live in New York City. I'm always very busy, but I'm very happy.

From Monday to Friday I [2]_____ in a bookstore, the Strand Bookstore in Manhattan. Then on Saturdays I [3]_____ another job – I'm a singer with a band. It's great because I love books and I [4]_____ singing.

On weekdays I usually [5]_____ work at 6 o'clock, but sometimes I [6]_____ late, until 9 or 10 o'clock at night. On Saturday evenings, I [7]_____ in nightclubs in all parts of the city. I [8]_____ to bed until 3 or 4 o'clock in the morning.

On Sundays, I [9]_____ much at all. I often [10]_____ in a little restaurant near my apartment. I never [11]_____ on Sundays. I'm too tired."

Questions and negatives

3 CD1 37 Listen and complete Claire's answers.
Practice the questions and answers with a partner.

1 Where do you live? _____ New York.
2 Do you like your job? Yes, I _____.
3 Do you relax on weekends? No, I _____.
4 Why don't you relax on weekends? Because I _____ in nightclubs.

Role play

4 Work with your partner. One of you is Claire Higgins.
Ask and answer questions.

How old ... ?
... you live in New York?
Where ... you work?
What time ... you finish work?
How many jobs ... you have?
... you like your jobs?
Why ... you like them?
What ... you do on Sundays?
... you cook on Sundays?

How old are you, Claire?
I'm 24.

CD1 38 Listen and compare.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the chart.

Simple Present	Affirmative	Negative
I/you	work	don't work
he/she/it	_____	_____
we/they	_____	_____

2 Complete the questions and answers.

Where _____ you work?
Where _____ she work?
_____ you work in New York? Yes, I _____.
_____ he work in New York? No, he _____.

3 Find the adverbs in the text.

always usually often sometimes never

▶▶ Grammar Reference 3.1–3.2 p. 131–132

Listening and pronunciation

5 CD1 39 Listen and choose the sentence you hear.

1 a ☐ Claire, why do you like your job?
b ☐ Claire, why don't you like your job?
2 a ☐ When do you leave New York?
b ☐ Where do you live in New York?
3 a ☐ What do you do on Tuesday evenings?
b ☐ What do you do on Thursday evenings?
4 a ☐ She really loves singing.
b ☐ He really loves singing.
5 a ☐ She reads a lot.
b ☐ She eats a lot.
6 a ☐ Where does she go on Sundays?
b ☐ What does she do on Sundays?

PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Use the words in the box to complete the questions. Match the questions and answers.

Who	How	What time	Do	Where	When	Why	What

Questions	Answers
1 What time do you get up?	a My parents and brothers.
2 ____ do you go on vacation?	b To Thailand or Hawaii.
3 ____ do you do on Sundays?	c When I get home.
4 ____ do you do your homework?	d At about 7 o'clock on weekdays.
5 ____ do you live with?	e I always relax.
6 ____ do you like your job?	f Usually by bus.
7 ____ do you travel to school?	g Yes, I do sometimes.
8 ____ you go out on Friday evenings?	h Because it's interesting.

CD1 40 Listen and check.

2 Ask and answer the questions with a partner. Give true answers.

3 Tell the class about you and your partner.

I live with my parents and my grandmother. Mario lives with his parents, too.

Affirmatives and negatives

4 Make the sentences opposite.

1 She's Korean. *She isn't Korean.*
2 I don't like cooking. *I like cooking.*
3 She doesn't speak Spanish.
4 They want to learn English.
5 We're tired and we want to go to bed.
6 Roberto likes watching football on TV, but he doesn't like playing it.
7 I work at home because I have a computer.
8 Amelia isn't happy because she doesn't have a new car.
9 I don't go to bed early.
10 He goes to bed early.

5 Write two false sentences. Get the other students to correct them.

I'm Brazilian. — *You aren't Brazilian! You're Mexican!*

Ana Mari goes to college. — *She doesn't go to college! She works in a bank!*

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

In my free time

1 Answer the questions.

- What season is it now? Name the other seasons.
- What month is it now? Say all the months.
- Which months are the different seasons?

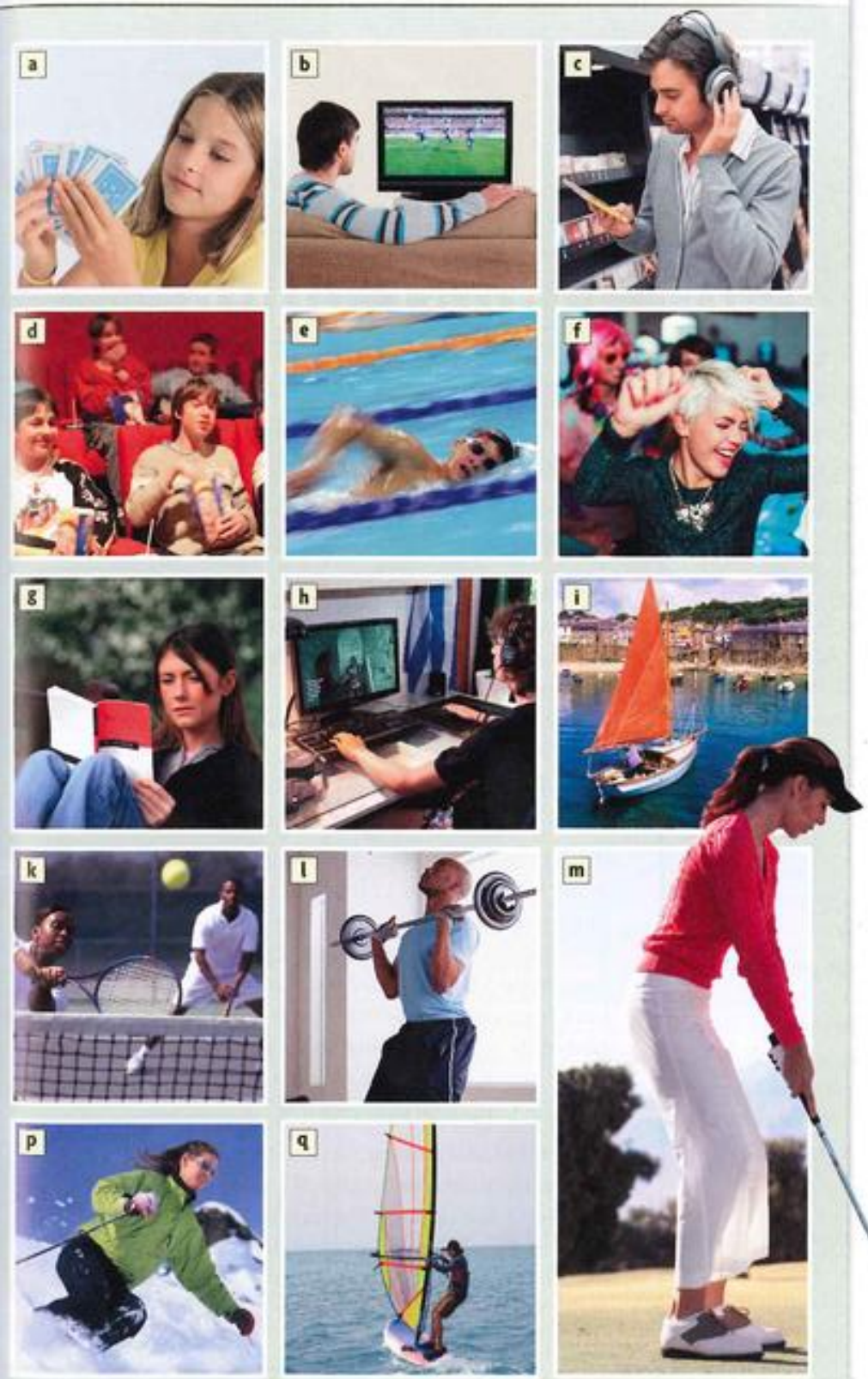
2 Look at the pictures. Match the words and pictures.

Which season(s) do the activities go with?

You play golf in summer.

But I play golf in all seasons!

- ☐ playing golf
- ☐ going to the movies
- ☐ listening to music
- ☐ swimming
- ☐ watching TV
- ☐ going to the gym
- ☐ windsurfing
- ☐ playing computer games
- ☐ cooking
- ☐ playing tennis
- ☐ playing cards
- ☐ skiing
- ☐ dancing
- ☐ sailing
- ☐ running
- ☐ reading
- ☐ cycling



Listening

3 CD1 41 Listen to five conversations. What do the people like doing in their free time? When exactly? Complete the chart.

	What?	When?
Andy		
Roger		
Linda		
Ben & Josh		
Sandra & Brian		

like + -ing
I **like** playing golf.
I **don't like** running.
▶▶ **Grammar Reference 3.3 p. 132**

4 What do you think your teacher likes doing? Discuss in your groups and make a list.

I think he/she likes going to the movies.

No, I think he/she prefers watching TV.

Ask your teacher questions to find out who is correct.

Do you like ...-ing?

Talking about you

5 Tell each other what you like doing and what you don't like doing in your free time. Ask questions to find out details.

I don't like watching TV, but I like reading very much.

Oh, really? What do you read?

Why don't you like watching TV?

▶▶ **WRITING Filling out forms** *p. 102*

READING AND SPEAKING

Perfect weekends

1 Match a verb in **A** with the words in **B**.

watch TV

A	B
watch	shopping, cards, music, dancing, late, the piano, TV, French movies, dinner
listen to	
play	
go	
get up	
cook	

CD1 42 Listen and check. Can you remember the sentences?

2 Look at the pictures and read the introductions about Jamie Cullum and Bobbi Brown. What do they do? What do they like doing on weekends?

3 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about **Jamie Cullum.**
Group B Read about **Bobbi Brown.**

4 Answer the questions about your person.

1 Where does he/she like spending weekends?
2 Who does she/he like to be with?
3 What does he/she do on Friday evenings?
4 What does she/he like doing on Saturday mornings?
5 Where does he/she go shopping?
6 Does he/she have any pets?
7 What does she/he do on Sundays?
8 Does she/he like cooking?

5 Work with a partner from the other group. Compare Jamie and Bobbi.

- What things do they both like doing?
- What things are different?

Speaking

6 On a piece of paper write down two things you like doing on weekends.

going to movies and cycling

Give the paper to another student. Read aloud the activities. Who is it?

It's Pedro! No, it's Marcus!

7 CD1 43 Listen to part of a song by Jamie Cullum. Do you like his music?

MY PERFECT

Jamie Cullum

Songwriter and jazz pianist Jamie Cullum lives in London with his wife Sophie Dahl, the model and cookbook writer. He enjoys going to markets, French movies, and playing cards on weekends.

JAMIE SAYS, "In my work I travel a lot and I stay in different hotels, so my perfect weekend is at home with my family and friends. I live in an apartment in northwest London next to my brother, Ben, and on weekends I like being with him and my wife, Sophie. On Friday nights, we often go to a club – we all love dancing.

On Saturdays, we get up late and I make breakfast; that's important to me. Then I sit at my piano – it's in my kitchen – and I play for a couple of hours. I don't write songs, I just play. My cat, Luna, listens. Sometimes in the afternoon we go shopping in Portobello Market. I love old things. I have black leather cowboy boots from there. Also, I look for old postcards – I like reading about people from the past. In the evening, we often watch a French or Japanese movie – I enjoy foreign movies.

After that I like playing cards with friends, sometimes until early Sunday morning. We sleep late on Sundays, but then I like cooking Sunday dinner, usually roast chicken. I really enjoy cooking. In the evening I call my parents and my nan [grandma] – they like hearing about my week."

Bobbi Brown

Bobbi Brown is the founder and CEO of Bobbi Brown cosmetics. She lives with her family in a quiet suburb in New Jersey. She enjoys barbecuing, doing yoga, and listening to hip-hop on weekends.

BOBBI SAYS, "My perfect weekend starts at home with my husband, Steven Plofker, and my youngest son. Sometimes my older sons, who are in college, are there, too. And we usually have a couple of exchange students, always boys. I'm often tired after a week working in the city, so I just like to relax at home on Friday nights. After work I put on a big sweater and a pair of sneakers. Then we cook outside in the backyard.

On Saturdays, I usually wake up at about 7:00 a.m. I make a macchiato [a strong cup of coffee], and then I read the news. At 7:30, I often do yoga or go to an exercise class at the gym. I like listening to hip-hop music while I exercise – it makes me feel happy. After that, I go shopping at a farmers' market in the summer or at a store in the winter. When I get home, the boys are usually just getting up! I talk to them for a while, and then I walk my dogs. In the afternoon, I sometimes go out to lunch or to a museum. We usually cook dinner at home. I like cooking healthy food.

On Sundays, I often go for a walk with a friend while my husband plays golf. I love my weekends at home. After I relax all weekend, I'm ready for another busy week of work and travel."

SPEAKING AND LISTENING

Your work–life balance

1 Read and complete the questionnaire about you. Write Y (yes) or N (no). Then look at the answer key. Do you have a good work–life balance?

2 Ask your teacher the questions, then ask two students. Complete the questionnaire about them.

3 Discuss in small groups. Who has a good work–life balance? Who lives to work?

4 CD1 44 Listen to Dr. Susan Hall, an expert on the work–life balance. Answer the questions.

1 Why does she say that work is important?
2 Why is "play" important?
3 What is the problem with taking work home?
4 What's her final advice?

What do you think?

- How many people do you know who love their work?
- Do you know people who don't love their work?
- "If you like your job, you never have to work again." Do you agree?

Writing

5 Write about your partner. Use the information from the questionnaire.

Maria is a student. She likes her classes very much. She doesn't have many free-time activities. She ...

Questionnaire

Your work–life balance

DO YOU ...?	Me	T	S1	S2
1 like your work				
2 have many free-time activities				
3 spend a lot of time with family and friends				
4 relax on weekends				
5 have breakfast before you go to work				
6 travel far to work				
7 sometimes stay late at work				
8 often bring work home				
9 have trouble sleeping				
10 think about work when you are at home				

KEY:

Scoring points

Answers 1–3	2 points for YES
Answers 4–5	1 point for YES
Answers 6–10	0 points for YES

How do you score?

0–2 points = You live to work.
3–5 points = Your work–life balance is OK.
6–8 points = Your work–life balance is excellent.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Social expressions (1)

1 Look at the pictures of Hakan, a student of English in New York. Where is he? Who are the other people?

2 Look at the first sentences of conversations in **A**. They are all conversations in Hakan's day. Who says the sentences? Is it …?

- Hakan
- his host family
- his teacher
- another student
- the woman who works in the coffee shop

A
1 Bye! Have a nice day!
2 I'm sorry I'm late. The traffic's very bad this morning.
3 What's the matter, Hakan? Do you have a problem?
4 Can I open the window? It's really warm in here.
5 Can you help me? What does *bilingual* mean?
6 Do you want a macchiato?
7 Excuse me! Is this seat free?
8 *Fala Português?*
9 Hi, Hakan! How was your day?

3 Match a sentence in **A** with a response in **B**.
CD1 45 Listen and check.

B
___ That's OK. Come and sit down.
1 Thanks. You too. See you later.
___ Good, thanks. Really interesting. How about yours?
___ Yes, it is. Please sit down if you want.
___ Yes. I don't understand this exercise.
___ It means *in two languages*.
___ I'm sorry. I don't speak Portuguese.
___ Sure. Good idea. It is hot in here, isn't it?
___ Excuse me? Can you say that again?

4 Work with a partner. Practice some of the conversations. Try to continue them.

A Bye! Have a nice day!
B Thanks. You too. See you later.
A OK! At about four o'clock?
B Well, uh … school doesn't finish until four.
A Oh, OK! See you about 4:30, then!

CD1 46 Listen and compare your conversations.

Oxford Online Skills Program
Log in for additional online learning

4 Somewhere to live

There is/are • *some/any/a lot of* • *this/that/these/those*
Adjectives • Numbers and prices

STARTER

1 Write the words in the correct column.

sofa	stove	bus stop	refrigerator
DVD player	table	post office	oven
café	armchair	sidewalk	washing machine
drugstore	bookshelves	traffic lights	mirror

living room	kitchen	other room	street

2 CD1 47 Listen and check. Practice the words.

AN APARTMENT TO RENT

There is/are – prepositions

1 CD1 48 Josie wants to rent an apartment. Listen and complete her conversation with her friend Emily.

J Here's an apartment on Franklin Street!
E Is it nice?
J Well, there's a big living room.
E Oh, that's good.
J And there are two bedrooms.
E Great! What about the kitchen?
J _____ a new kitchen.
E Wow! How many bathrooms _____ ?
J Uh … _____ just one bathroom.
E _____ a yard?
J No, _____ a yard.
E That's OK. It sounds great!

Practice the conversation with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the chart.

Affirmative	There _is_ a washing machine. There _____ two bedrooms.
Negative	There _____ a yard. There _aren't_ any carpets.
Question	_____ _____ a dining room? How many bathrooms _____ _____?

▶▶ Grammar Reference 4.1–4.2 p. 132

2 Look at the photos of the apartment. Describe the living room.

There's a sofa. *There are two armchairs.*

3 Ask and answer questions about the apartment.

Is there … ?
- a shower
- a washing machine
- a refrigerator
- a dining room

Is there a shower? *Yes, there is.*

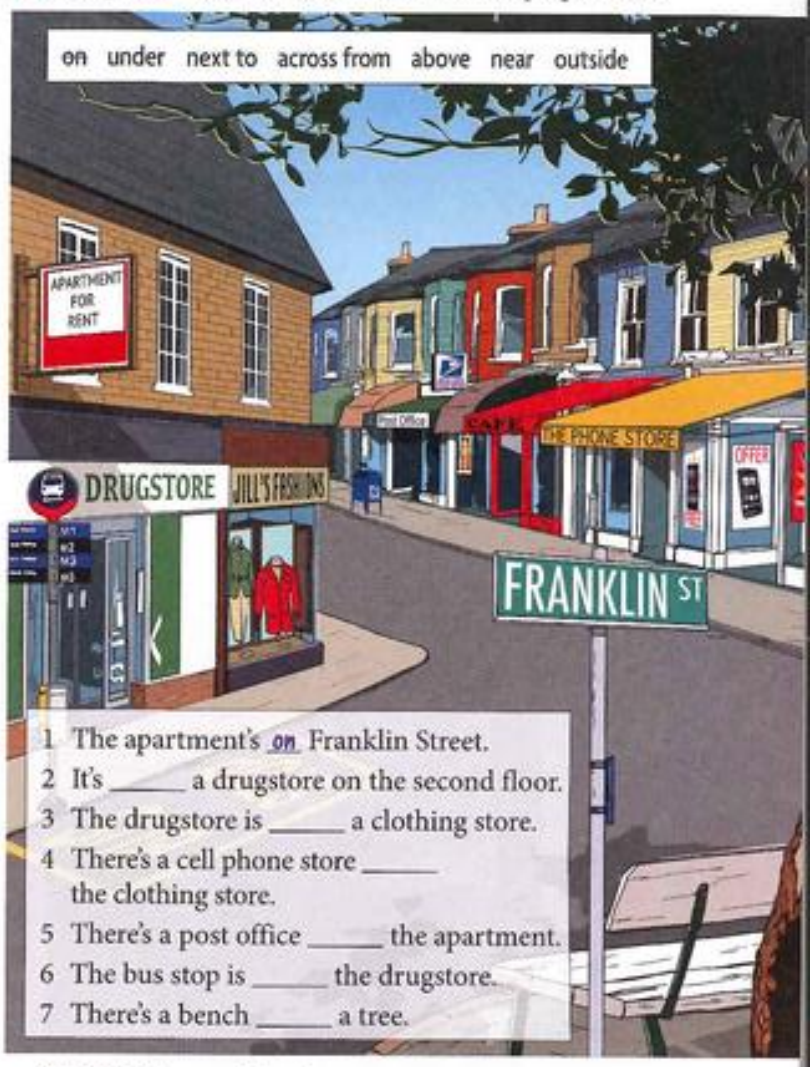
How many … are there?
- bedrooms
- bathrooms
- armchairs

Are there any … ?
- pictures
- bookshelves
- carpets

CD1 49 Listen and check.

Prepositions

4 Complete the sentences with the correct preposition.



1 The apartment's _on_ Franklin Street.
2 It's _____ a drugstore on the second floor.
3 The drugstore is _____ a clothing store.
4 There's a cell phone store _____ the clothing store.
5 There's a post office _____ the apartment.
6 The bus stop is _____ the drugstore.
7 There's a bench _____ a tree.

CD1 50 Listen and check.

PRACTICE

Location, location, location

1 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions.

Student A Look at the ad for an apartment on p. 145.
Student B Look at the ad for a different apartment on p. 148.

2 CD1 51 Look at the ad on p. 145. Listen to the description. There are nine mistakes. Shout *Stop!* when you hear a mistake.

Stop! There aren't four bedrooms! There are only three!

3 Work with a partner. Draw a plan of your home. Show the plan and describe your home to your partner.

In my living room there's a …

A NEW APARTMENT

some/any/a lot of

1 Josie is in her new apartment. What does she have? What doesn't she have? Tell a partner.

plates ✓✓
clothes ✓✓✓✓
glasses ✗
pictures ✓✓
mugs ✗
shoes ✓✓✓✓✓
towels ✗
cups ✓✓

She has some plates.

She has a lot of clothes.

She doesn't have any glasses.

CD1 52 Listen and check.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 What's the difference between the sentences?
She has **five** plates.
She has **some** plates.
She has **a lot of** plates.

2 When do we use *some*? When do we use *any*?
There are **some** cups.
There aren't **any** glasses.
Does she have **any** clothes?

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 4.3–4.4 p. 132**

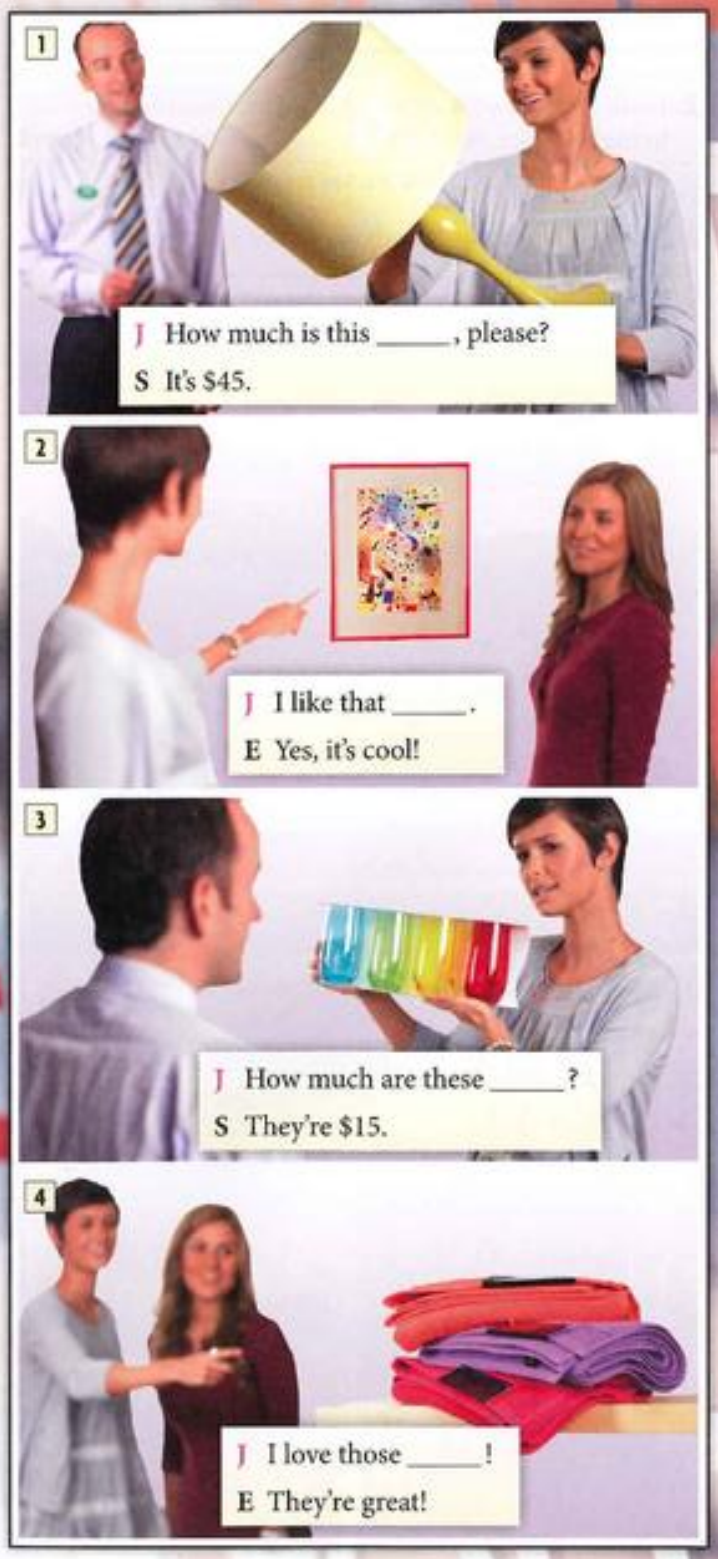
this/that/these/those

2 Look at Josie's shopping list. What does she need?

Things to buy

glasses towels a lamp
a teakettle mugs

3 Look at Josie and Emily shopping. Complete the conversations.



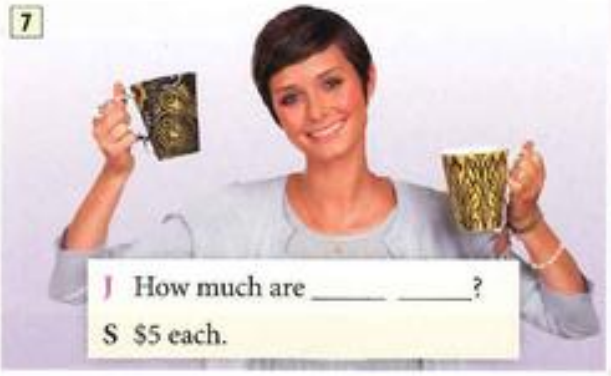
5

J Look at _____ _____!
E They're beautiful!

6

E Do you like _____ _____?
J Yeah! It's a great color!

7



J How much are _____ _____?
S $5 each.

8

J Look at _____ _____!
E You don't need any more clothes!

CD1 53 Listen and check. Practice the conversations.

Singular	this	that
Plural	these	those

▶▶ Grammar Reference 4.5 p. 132

PRACTICE

In our classroom

1 Complete the sentences with *some*, *any*, or *a*.

1 I have a dictionary and some books on my table.
2 There aren't _____ French students in our class.
3 Do we have _____ homework tonight?
4 I need _____ help with this exercise.
5 Is there _____ test this week?
6 There are _____ difficult exercises in this book, but we have _____ very good teacher.

2 Write sentences, then talk about things in your classroom.

There's a big window. *There are some chairs.*
These are my books. *That's the teacher's bag.*

What's in your bag?

3 CD1 54 Listen to Christina. Choose the things she has in her handbag.

☐ a phone ☐ a notebook ☐ a lipstick ☐ a phone charger ☐ pens
☐ glasses ☐ a comb ☐ stamps ☐ keys ☐ a wallet

4 What does she have? What doesn't she have?

She has a phone and some pens. She doesn't have a comb, and she doesn't have any stamps.

5 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about what's in your bag.

Do you have a wallet? — *Yes, I do.*
Is there a pen? — *Yes, of course!*

Check it

6 Choose the correct sentence.

1 ☐ Do you have some dictionary?
☐ Do you have a dictionary?
2 ☐ Here are some photos of my children.
☐ Here are any photos of my children.
3 ☐ I have a lot of books.
☐ I have a lot books.
4 ☐ Pete, this is Dave. Dave, this is Pete.
☐ Pete, that is Dave. Dave, that is Pete.
5 ☐ I don't have some money.
☐ I don't have any money.
6 ☐ Look at these people over there.
☐ Look at those people over there.

READING AND SPEAKING

America's most famous address

1 Look at the pictures of the White House. What can you see?

2 What do you know about the White House? Do you think these sentences are true (T) or false (F)?

1 The White House is more than 200 years old. T
2 No one lives in the White House.
3 All the rooms are government offices.
4 The Oval Office is where the president works.
5 The White House is open to the public.
6 There are a lot of fun things for a president to do.

3 Read the text and check your answers.

4 Answer the questions.

1 The White House has two uses. What are they?
2 Where exactly in the White House does the president live?
3 Where does the president work?
4 Where do special guests stay?
5 What is in the Oval Office?
6 What does each new president change?
7 How much does it cost to visit the White House?
8 How many people work in the White House?
9 What can the president do to relax?

5 Find the numbers in the text. What do they refer to?

50 – There are fifty states.

50	317 million	6,000	132	35	five	six	140

INSIDE THE

The White House, 1600 Pennsylvania Avenue, Washington, DC, is the most famous address in America. It is where the United States president works, and lives. The president's family has children's birthday parties, holiday dinners, and weddings in this world-famous building.

THE BUILDING

First built in 1800, the White House is where the president of the United States governs a country of 50 states and 317 million people.

The presidential family lives on the second and third floors. There are 16 bedrooms, a living room, a kitchen, and a dining room. Special guests stay in the Queen's Bedroom or the Lincoln Bedroom.

In the West Wing are the staff offices. The president's own office, the Oval Office, is also there. It has three large windows behind the president's desk, and there is a fireplace at the other end.

Each new president chooses new curtains, new furniture, and a special new carpet. There are pictures of old presidents on the wall, and there is the famous desk, a gift from the British Queen Victoria in 1880.

WHITE HOUSE

THE WHITE HOUSE DAY BY DAY

The White House is open to visitors. It is free. About 6,000 people a day visit. The president meets special guests in the East Room and talks to journalists in the Press Room.

About 150 people work for the president in the West Wing and for the presidential family in the East Wing. Another 100 people take care of the building day and night.

There are 132 rooms, 35 bathrooms, and five kitchens, all on six floors. There are three elevators. The State Dining Room is big enough for 140 guests.

Outside, gardeners grow fruit and vegetables. There is also a tennis court, a jogging track, and a swimming pool. Inside there is a movie theater, a billiard room, a bowling alley, and a library. As former President Reagan said,

"The White House is like an eight-star hotel!"

Language work

6 Ask and answer questions about things in the White House.

- a movie theater
- many offices
- many bathrooms
- a swimming pool
- a library
- any elevators
- a tennis court
- a vegetable garden

Is there a movie theater?
Yes, there is.

Are there many offices?
Yes, there are a lot.

7 Match a **verb** with a **place**. Make sentences.

You can cook in the kitchen.

Verb	Place
cook	bedroom
sleep	office
take a shower	dining room
relax	living room
eat	garden
work	kitchen
read	bathroom
grow vegetables	library

Project

Research a famous building in your country. Where is it? Is it a government building? A museum? Is it old? Modern?

Tell the other students about it.

▶▶ WRITING CD1 55 Describing your home p. 103

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Adjectives for *good* and *bad*

1 There are a lot of different words for *good* and *bad*. Write the words in the chart.

excellent
amazing
terrific
terrible
great
fabulous
wonderful
horrible
awful
fantastic

good	bad
excellent	

2 CD1 56 Listen to the intonation.

Listen again and repeat. Practice the other adjectives.

3 CD1 57 Listen to the conversations. Match the nouns with the adjectives.

1 Alice's new boyfriend	fantastic – fabulous
2 Ben's new apartment	awful
3 the weather	great
4 the meal	horrible – terrible
5 new shoes	excellent
6 the new teacher	great – amazing

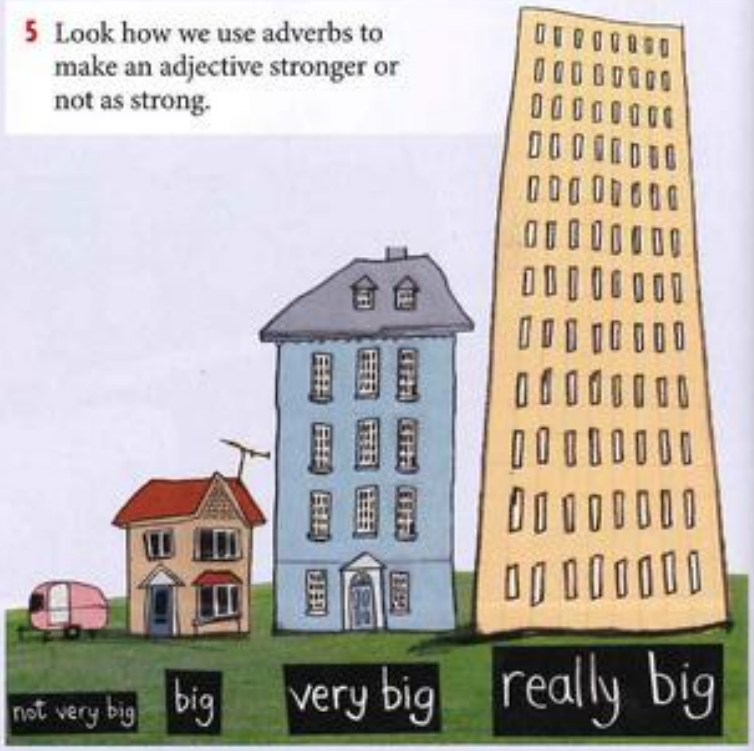
Look at CD1 57 on p. 118, and practice the conversations.

4 Work with a partner. Continue these conversations.

1 *"The weather's beautiful, isn't it?"*
2 *"It's a great party, isn't it?"*
3 *"Do you like Thomas?"*
4 *"How's your meal?"*
5 *"What do you think of your boss?"*
6 *"Do you like my new apartment?"*

Adverb + adjective

5 Look how we use adverbs to make an adjective stronger or not as strong.



6 CD1 58 Listen to five conversations. Who/What are they talking about? What adverb + adjective do they use?

1 Angela's car	really expensive, ...
2	
3	
4	
5	

CD1 58 Listen again. Practice the conversations.

7 Work with a partner. Have conversations. Start:

1 *"Is your town old?"*
2 *"Is your school nice?"*
3 *"Is your apartment big?"*

Is your town old?

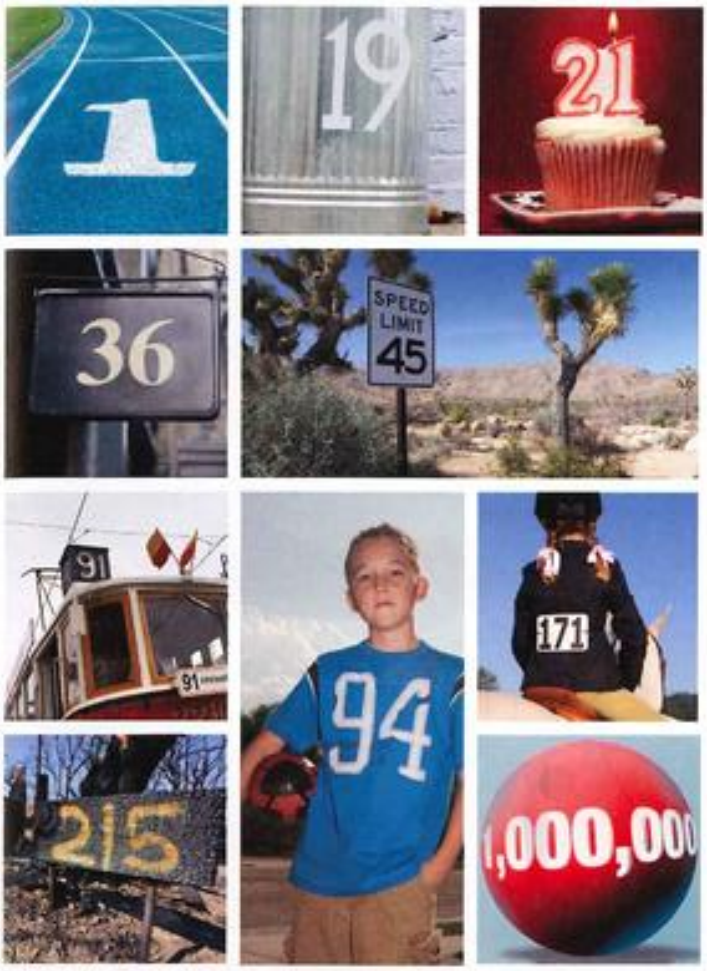
Well, there are some parts that are old, but there are a lot of very new buildings, too ...

No, it isn't very old. There are ...

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Numbers

1 Look at the pictures. Say the numbers.



2 Say these numbers.

8	10	12	15
20	32	45	60
76	99	187	250
300	1,000	1,000,000	

CD1 59 Listen and check. Practice again.

3 How do we say these numbers in English?

1½ 2¼ 6.8 17.5 212-555-6490 917-555-6678

CD1 60 Listen and check. Practice the numbers.

4 CD1 61 Write the numbers you hear.

1 30, ... _____ 3 _____

2 _____ 4 _____

Prices

5 Say these prices.

6 CD1 62 Listen and write the numbers and prices you hear.

1 _____ 3 _____ 5 _____ 7 _____

2 _____ 4 _____ 6 _____ 8 _____

7 Work with a partner. One of you works in a store, the other is a customer. Have conversations.

Excuse me! How much are these ...?

Oh, they're very original! They're $200.

What! That's crazy! That's much too expensive! No, thanks. Not today.

8 Write numbers and prices from your everyday life. Tell your partner about them.

375 — I live at number 375 on Hill Road.

$2.50 — My bus fare to work is $2.50.

Oxford Online Skills Program
Log in for additional online learning

5 Super me!

can/can't • *was/were/could* • Words that go together • Polite requests

STARTER

Do you know the comic-book hero, Superman? Where does he come from? What can he do?

CD2 2 Listen and compare your ideas.

SUPERMAN IS AMAZING!

can/can't

1 Alfie and his cousin Ivy are talking about Superman.
Complete what Alfie says using *can* and the verbs in the box.

speak	see	fly

Alfie Superman's amazing!
Ivy Really? What **can** he **do**?
Alfie He **can do** everything!
Ivy No, he **can't**!
Alfie Yes, he **can**. He _____ _____ at the speed of light, he _____ _____ through buildings, *and* he _____ _____ every language in the world!

CD2 3 Listen and check.

2 CD2 4 Listen to the rest of the conversation. Answer the questions.

- Which languages do they talk about?
- Which sports do they talk about?

3 Complete the sentences from the conversation with *can* or *can't* + verb.

1 "_Can_ you _____ any languages?"
"Yes, I can. I _____ _____ Spanish and a little Chinese."

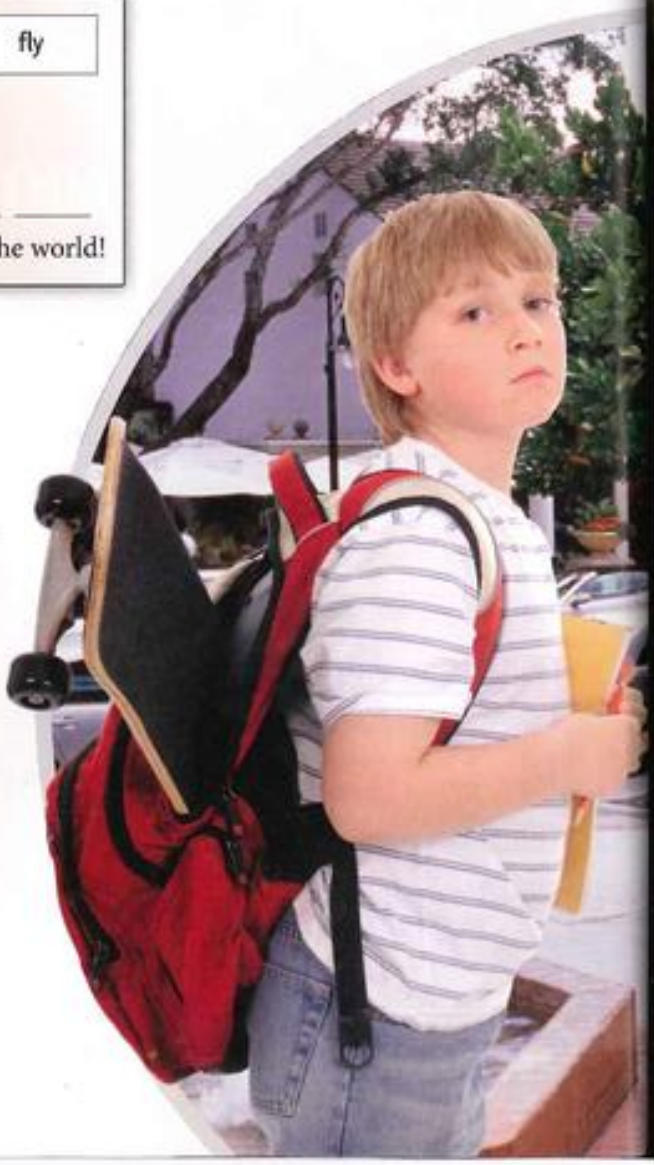
2 "You _____ _____ Spanish at all!"

3 "I _____ skateboard! You _____!"

4 "_____ you _____?"
"I _____ _____ a little, but my mom and dad _____ _____ really well."

5 "Superman _____ _____ *everything*. There's nothing Superman _____ _____!"

CD2 5 Listen and check. Practice the sentences with a partner.



GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

1 Say all persons of *can* and *can't*. What do you notice?

I can, you can, he ..., she ..., it ..., we ..., they ...
I can't, you ...

2 CD2 6 Listen and repeat these sentences.
I can speak Spanish. = /kən/
Can you speak Spanish? = /kən/
Yes, **I can**. = /kæn/
No, **I can't**. = /kænt/

3 Say these sentences.

• • ● • ● ●
You can swim. I can't ski.

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 5.1 p. 133**

PRACTICE

Ivy can't cook. Can you?

1 CD2 7 Listen and complete the chart for Ivy. Put (Y) or (N).

Can ...?	Ivy	Your partner
speak a foreign language	Y	
cook	N	
skateboard		
swim		
play tennis		
ski		
play any musical instruments		

2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about Ivy.

Can Ivy ...? — *Yes, she can. / No, she can't.*

3 Complete the sentences about Ivy with adverbs from the box.

(not) at all (x2)	a little (x2)	pretty well
very well	really well	

1 She can speak Chinese a little.
2 She can't cook _____.
3 She can swim _____.
4 She can play tennis _____.
5 She can ski _____.
6 Her dad can play the guitar _____.
7 Her mom can play the piano _____.
8 She can't play anything _____.

CD2 8 Listen and compare the sentences.

4 Ask questions to complete the chart in exercise 1 about your partner.

Can you speak Spanish? — *Yes, but not very well.*

5 Tell the class about you and your partner.

José can speak Spanish really well, but I can't.

6 CD2 9 Listen and choose what you hear.

1 She *can* / *can't* cook.
2 I *can* / *can't* hear you.
3 They *can* / *can't* come to the party.
4 *Can* / *Can't* you see my glasses anywhere?
5 You *can* / *can't* always get what you want.
6 *Can* / *Can't* you do the homework?

7 With a partner, take turns saying the sentences in exercise 6. Say if you hear *can* or *can't*.

TODAY AND YESTERDAY

Past – *was/were/could*

1 CD2 10 Read and listen to the questions about the present and the past. Complete the answers.

	Present	Past
1	**What day is it today?** It's _____.	**What day was it yesterday?** It was _____.
2	**What month is it now?** It's _____.	**What month was it last month?** It was _____.
3	**Is it sunny today?** _____, it is. / _____, it isn't.	**Was it sunny yesterday?** _____, it was. / _____, it wasn't.
4	**Where are you now?** I'm in/at _____.	**Where were you yesterday?** I was in/at _____.
5	**Where are your parents now?** They're in/at _____.	**Where were they yesterday?** They were in/at _____.
6	**Are you in Brazil now?** _____, I am. / _____, I'm not.	**Were you in Brazil last year?** _____, I was. / _____, I wasn't.
7	**Can you ski?** _____, I can. / _____, I can't.	**Could you ski when you were five?** _____, I could. / _____, I couldn't.
8	**Can your teacher speak a lot of languages?** Yes, _____ can./ No, _____ can't.	**Could your teacher speak English when he/she was seven?** Yes, _____ could. / No, _____ couldn't.

GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

1 Complete the Simple Past of *to be*.

	Affirmative	Negative
I	was	wasn't
you	were	weren't
he/she/it	_____	_____
we	were	_____
they	_____	_____

2 What is the past of *can*?

	Affirmative	Negative
I/you/he/she/it/we/they	_____	_____

3 CD2 11 Listen and repeat the sentences.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 5.2–5.3 p. 133

2 Ask and answer the questions about the past in exercise 1 with a partner.

What day was it yesterday? — *It was ...*

3 Complete the sentences with the past of the verb *to be* and *can*.

1 I wasn't at school yesterday because I _____ sick.
2 My parents _____ at work last week. They _____ on vacation in Mexico.
3 Where _____ you yesterday? You _____ at soccer practice.
4 I _____ read and write when I _____ just five.
5 My sister _____ read until she _____ seven.

Talking about you

4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about you.

- at 8:00 this morning
- at 10:00 last night
- at this time yesterday
- last Saturday evening
- last Sunday morning

Where were you at 8:00 this morning?

I was at home/in bed/ at work/in town ...

PRACTICE

Child prodigies

1 Look at the photos. Who are the children? What can they do? Why are they "child prodigies"?

Ryan Wang

Aelita Andre

2 CD2 12 Listen and complete the sentences about Ryan Wang. Read them aloud.

Ryan Wang – Pianist

1 He _was_ born in _____ in Vancouver, Canada.
2 He _____ _____ the piano really well.
3 He _____ _____ the piano when he _____ _____.
4 He _____ _____ the piano very well after a year and a half.
5 When he _____ _____, he played with the Shanghai Symphony. He _____ a big success.

3 Work with a partner. Look at the information and make sentences about Aelita Andre.

Aelita Andre – Artist

1 She/born/on January 9, 2007/Melbourne, Australia.
2 She/start to paint when/just nine months old.
3 And she/paint beautifully when/just one year old.
4 When/two, some of her art was in an exhibition.

CD2 13 Listen and check.

4 Ask and answer questions about Ryan and Aelita.

- When / born?
- Where / born?
- How old / when / could ...?

Listening

5 Pablo Picasso was also a child prodigy. Read and complete the conversation about him.

PABLO **PICASSO**

October 25, 1881–April 8, 1973

A Hey, look at that painting! It's a Picasso!
B Oh, yes! It's wonderful!!
A Where [1] _was_ Picasso _born_?
B In Málaga.
A Oh, so he [2] _____ Spanish?
B Yes, he [3] _____.
A [4] _____ his parents rich?
B Well, they [5] _____ rich and they [6] _____ poor. His father, Don José, [7] _____ a painter and a professor of art. His mother, Doña Maria, [8] _____ a homemaker.
A So, [9] _____ Picasso good at drawing when he [10] _____ young?
B Oh, yes. He [11] _____ a child prodigy. He [12] _____ draw before he [13] _____ speak. His first word [14] _____ *lápiz*, which is Spanish for *pencil*.
A Wow! What a story!

Picasso's birthplace in Málaga, Spain

CD2 14 Listen and check. Practice the conversation.

Talking about you

6 Work in groups. Ask and answer the questions about you.

1 When / born?
2 Where / born?
3 Where / parents born?
4 How old were you when you could ...?
- walk • talk • read • swim • ride a bike
- use a computer • speak a foreign language

▶▶ WRITING A formal email *p. 104*

READING AND SPEAKING

A talented family

1 Do you have any talented people in your family? What can they do?

2 Look at the pictures of Nicola Benedetti and her father, Gio. Read the introduction to the article. Answer the questions.

1 What does Nicola do?
2 Why was 2004 special for her?
3 Where does she live?
4 What does her sister do?
5 What does her father do?

3 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about **Nicola**. Answer these questions.

1 Was music important in her family?
2 How old was Nicola when she could play the violin?
3 Did her father work hard?
4 Were her grandparents rich or poor?
5 Is money important to Nicola and her father?
6 Does her father like classical music?
7 What does she teach her father? What does he teach her?
8 When does she play the violin with her sister?

Group B Read about **Gio**. Answer these questions.

1 Where was Gio born?
2 Why couldn't he buy the Jaguar car?
3 What was Gio's business?
4 How old was Nicola when she could play the violin?
5 Can Gio play a musical instrument?
6 What music does he like? What doesn't he like?
7 Does Nicola work hard?
8 Why does he cry?

4 Work with a partner from the other group. Tell your partner about your person.

Language work

5 Who or what do these adjectives from the text refer to?

busy	important	difficult	proud
hardworking	classical	expensive	passionate
poor	close	independent	sentimental

Nicola's father was always busy.

What do you think?

Work as a class. Discuss the questions.

- Do Nicola and Gio have a good relationship?
- How are they similar? How are they different?
- Does Nicola have a good relationship with her sister?
- What about *your* family? Who are you close to? Why?

A PASSION FOR SUCCESS

Nicola Benedetti is a world-famous violinist. She was the BBC Young Musician of the Year in 2004 when she was 16. She lives in London, near her sister, Stephanie, who is also a violinist. Their father, Gio Benedetti, is a businessman. He lives with his wife, Francesca, in Scotland.

Nicola Benedetti

A PASSION FOR *Music*

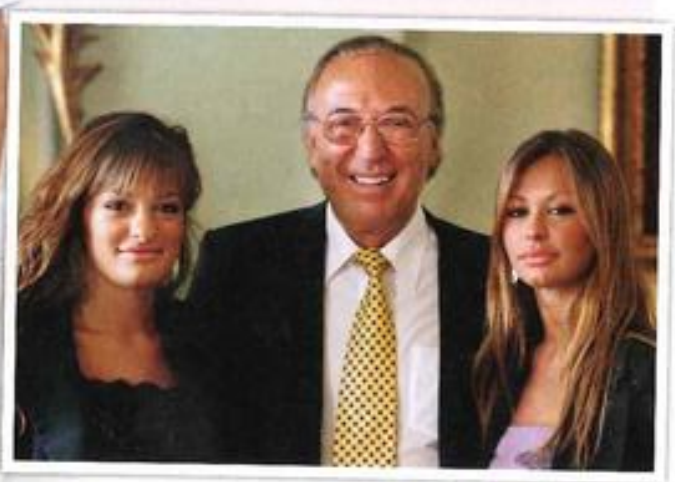
"When I was young, music wasn't very important in our house. Then, when I was four, I started playing the violin. In my first lesson, I was so happy, I couldn't stop crying.

My dad, Gio, was always busy. He was very hardworking. His parents were poor, so he wanted to give me and my sister everything. I like hard work too, and I know what I want – if someone says to me 'You can't do that', I think 'Oh yes I can!' That's very like my dad.

But my dad's a businessman, and I'm an artist. Money is very important to him, but for me, success isn't the same as earning lots of money. He likes the music I play, but he doesn't like classical music very much. I teach him about music, and he tells me about business.

My sister and I are very close. We sometimes play together – not professionally, but at family occasions like weddings.

I live for my work. I never want to stop. Music is my life."



Gio Benedetti

A PASSION FOR **Business**

"I was born in a small village near Lucca in Italy. We were poor but happy. When I was ten, I came to Scotland to live with my uncle. It was very difficult.

When I was 16, there was a beautiful car – a Jaguar – in the shops but I couldn't afford it. It was too expensive. So I started a business to make money – a dry-cleaning business. Soon there were 15 shops. By the time I was 19, I could afford the Jaguar. That was a very good day!

Nicola was always independent, like me. She could play the violin when she was four. Now she plays concerts all over the world. I am so proud of her. She practices for seven hours a day. Scotland is so proud of her. Everybody knows her now.

I can't play any musical instruments. I like country and western music, but not classical. Nicola knows what she wants. She has a passion to succeed, like me, and she works very hard to get it. When she plays the violin, she's passionate – that's the Italian in her. When I see her play, I often cry. I can't help it. I'm very sentimental."

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Words that go together

Noun + noun

1 Match a noun in **A** with a noun in **B**. Do we write one word or two?

post office *businessperson*

A	B
book	room
motor	shop/store
sun	station (x2)
living	cycle
bus	lights
hand	stop
train	glasses
traffic	bag
gas	

2 Test the other students on the nouns that go together.

This is where we buy books.

A bookstore.

3 CD2 15 Listen to three conversations. Write all the noun + noun combinations you hear.

1 post office, _____, _____

2 _____, _____, _____

3 _____, _____, _____, _____

4 With a partner, write a short conversation. Include some noun + noun combinations. Act out your conversation for the class.

Verb + noun

5 Match a **verb** with a **noun**.

verb	noun
send	a car
drive	children
ride	a lot of text messages
speak	a suit and tie
earn	TV a lot
live	three languages
play	a motorcycle
wear	on the third floor
take care of	a lot of money
watch	the guitar

6 Ask and answer questions with verb + noun combinations.

Do you send a lot of text messages?

No, I don't.

Do you earn a lot of money?

Don't be silly! Of course not!

7 CD2 16 Listen to the short conversations. After each one say which verb + noun combinations you hear.

8 Work with a partner. Look at CD2 16 on p. 119. Choose two of the conversations and memorize them.

Prepositions

9 Complete the sentences with a preposition from the box.

of	to (x3)	from	on	at	with	for

1 Do you like listening to music?

2 What kind _____ music do you like?

3 Where's your girlfriend _____? Is she Mexican?

4 Is Paula married _____ Mike?

5 Do you want to come shopping _____ me?

6 Were there any good shows _____ television last night?

7 What do you want _____ your birthday?

8 Can I speak _____ Dave? Is he _____ work today?

CD2 17 Listen and check. What are the replies? Practice the conversations.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Polite requests

1 CD2 18 Listen and complete the conversations. Where are the people?

2 What differences are there in the requests in exercise 1?

> 1 *Can/Could I ...?* and *Can/Could you ...?* express a request.
> **Can/Could I** ask you a question?
> **Can/Could you** do something for me?
>
> 2 *Can/Could* express an ability.
> **I can** swim./**I could** swim when I was four.

3 CD2 19 Listen and repeat the requests.
Notice how the intonation falls and rises.

Can I have a coffee, please?

Could you tell me the time, please?

Practice the conversations in exercise 1.

4 Complete the requests with *Can/Could I ...?* or *Can/Could you ...?*

1 Can I _____ have a turkey and cheese sandwich, please?
2 _____ mail this letter for me, please?
3 _____ give me your email address?
4 _____ talk to you for a second?
5 _____ lend me $20 until tomorrow?
6 _____ give me a hand with this box?

CD2 20 Listen and compare. Can you remember the replies?
Practice with a partner.

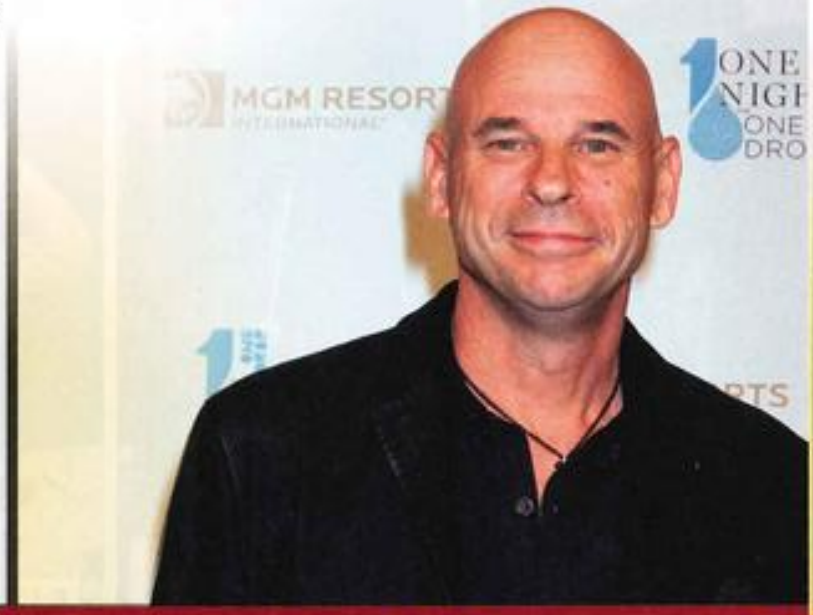
5 Have more conversations with some of these prompts.

a cola
pay by credit card
the check
a vanilla ice cream
a glass of water
a round-trip ticket
borrow your dictionary
do me a favor
try on these jeans
sit next to you
give me a ride
open the window

Oxford Online Skills Program
Log in for additional online learning

6 Life's ups and downs

Simple Past (1) – regular and irregular • Describing feelings
What's the date?



Guy Laliberté

Entrepreneur, Billionaire, Space Explorer

STARTER

When were your grandparents and great-grandparents born? Where were they born? What were their jobs? Were they rich or poor?

If you know, tell the class.

I think my great-grandfather was a farmer.

He was born in about 1920 in ....

CANADA'S CREATIVE GENIUS

Simple Past – regular verbs

1 Look at the photos. Do you know anything about Cirque du Soleil?

2 CD2 21 Read and listen to text **A**. Complete it with the verbs you hear. Answer the questions.

- Is Guy Laliberté rich?
- Where does he live?
- How much does he earn?

3 CD2 22 Read and listen to text **B** about his early years. Answer the questions.

- Where and when was he born?
- Were his parents rich?
- What did he do in high school?

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the sentences about Guy with the verb *live*.

Now he _____ in Montreal.

When he was a child, he _____ in Quebec City.

2 Read text **B**. Find the Simple Past of *work*, *produce*, and *learn*. How is the Simple Past formed?

▶▶ Grammar Reference 6.1 p. 134

A THE MAN

Guy Laliberté [1]_____ the founder and owner of Cirque du Soleil, the famous international performance group. He [2]_____ in Montreal, Canada, but he [3]_____ many homes around the world. He also has an island and a boat. Guy is one of the richest people in Canada. He [4]_____ millions of dollars every year. He [5]_____ a lot of money to charity.

B HIS EARLY YEARS

Guy was born on September 2, 1959, in Quebec City, Canada. His parents weren't poor, but they weren't rich. His mother was a nurse, and his father worked at an aluminum company. In high school, he produced several performance art shows. He also learned to play the accordion and the harmonica really well.

C HIS SUCCESS

When Guy was 18, he [1]_____ to Europe. He didn't have a lot of money, so on his first night in London he stayed on a park bench. Guy [2]_____ a little money by performing on the streets. He [3]_____ instruments and juggled, and he learned to eat fire and walk on stilts! Soon he [4]_____ a group of performers. They [5]_____ around Europe doing street shows. But he didn't earn much money. So did he give up? No!

Guy [6]_____ to Quebec. There, he [7]_____ some street parties and festivals. In 1984, his troupe received $1.2 million from the Quebec government to present a street show for a national celebration. The show, called Cirque du Soleil, was a success. Guy and his troupe organized more shows, and soon Cirque du Soleil was a huge hit. Now, it performs shows all over the world. Millions of people love the show's acrobats, its color, and its creativity. Laliberté is now a billionaire thanks to Cirque du Soleil.

His charity work Laliberté started the *One Drop Foundation* in 2007. The foundation helps people all over the world have access to clean water. In 2009, Guy was the first Canadian private space explorer. From space, he took photos of the earth, especially of water. In June 2011, Laliberté [8]_____ *Gaia*, a book that included these photos of the earth. Money from the sales of his book go to the *One Drop Foundation*. Laliberté is a man who makes a true difference in the world!

4 What is the Simple Past of these verbs?

play	travel	join	publish
return	plan	move	earn

CD2 23 Listen and check.

5 CD2 24 Listen to text **C**. Complete it with the Simple Past form of the verbs in exercise 4.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Find a question with *did* and a negative with *didn't* in text **C**.

2 Look at these questions.
Where **does** Guy **work**?
Where **did** his father **work**?
Did is the past of *do* and *does*.

3 We use *didn't* (= *did not*) to form the negative.
We **didn't have** much money.

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 6.2 p. 134**

6 Complete the questions about Guy.

1 Where _did_ his father work?
At an aluminum company.

2 What _____ his mother do?
She was a nurse.

3 What instruments _____ Guy _____ in high school?
Harmonica and accordion.

4 Where _____ he _____ when he was 18?
Europe.

5 Who _____ he _____ with around Europe?
A group of performers.

6 What _____ his troupe _____ in 1984?
Cirque du Soleil.

7 Where _____ he _____ in 2009? *To space.*

8 When _____ he _____ a book? *In 2011.*

CD2 25 Listen and check. Practice the questions and answers with a partner.

PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Complete the questions with *did*, *was*, or *were*.

1 Where _were_ your parents born?
2 Where _____ you live when you _____ a child?
3 _____ you live in a house or an apartment?
4 When _____ you start school?
5 Who _____ your first teacher?
6 Who _____ your best friend?
7 When _____ you learn to read and write?
8 When _____ you get your first cell phone?

2 Work in groups of two or three. Ask and answer the questions in exercise 1.

3 Tell the class some of the information you learned.

> Enrico's mother was born in ...
> His father ...
> He lived in ...

Pronunciation

4 CD2 26 Listen to three different pronunciations of *-ed*.

/t/ worked
/d/ lived
/ɪd/ started

5 CD2 27 Listen and write the Simple Past verbs in the chart. Then practice saying them.

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/

BEN'S UPS AND DOWNS

Irregular verbs

1 Write the Simple Past of these verbs. (There is a list of irregular verbs on p. 152.) Test your partner.

be	was/were	leave	_____
begin	_____	lose	_____
can	_____	make	_____
catch	_____	meet	_____
come	_____	send	_____
get	_____	take	_____
give	_____	win	_____
go	_____	write	_____
have	_____		

▶▶ Grammar Reference 6.3 p. 134

2 Read about Ben Way. What were his ups and downs?

Ben Way

He made his first million at 17. He was one of the first dotcom millionaires. Then he lost it all ... And now he's a millionaire again! How did he do it?

3 Read and complete the PROFILE of Ben with the verbs in the Simple Past. Compare your answers with a partner.

Listening

4 CD2 28 Listen to an interview with Ben. What else do you learn about him?

5 Make the questions. Ask and answer them with a partner.

1 What/Ben's parents do?
2 Where/he go to school?
3 Why/he have problems at school?
4 What/his dad give him in 1989?
5 Who/he help with their computers?
6 Why/he leave school at 16?
7 When/he win "Young Entrepreneur of the Year"?
8 Why/he lose his money?

> What did Ben's parents do?
> His father was a ...

PROFILE

Ben Way

dotcom millionaire

Year	Ben's Life
1980	He [1] _was_ (be) born on September 28, 1980.
	He [2] _____ (go) to school in a small village. He was dyslexic, he [3] _____ (can not) read and write.
1989	When he was nine, his father [4] _____ (give) him a computer. He [5] _____ (take) his computer everywhere with him.
1991	At 11, he [6] _____ (write) his first software program.
1995	When he was 15, he [7] _____ (begin) his own computer company.
1996	He [8] _____ (leave) school at 16.
1997	At 17, he [9] _____ (make) his first £1 million.
1999	At 19, he [10] _____ (have) £18.5 million.
2000	At 20, he [11] _____ (win) "Young Entrepreneur of the Year."
2001	When he was 21, he [12] _____ (lose) everything.
2002 –NOW	BUT THEN – at 22, he started a new company called "Rainmakers" and he became a millionaire all over again!

PRACTICE

Regular and irregular verbs

1 Complete the sentences with the verbs in the Simple Past.

1 My granddad _was_ (be) born in 1932. He _____ (die) in 2009.
2 My parents _____ (meet) in Los Angeles in 1983. They _____ (get) married in 1985.
3 I _____ (arrive) late for the lesson. It _____ (begin) at 2 o'clock.
4 I _____ (catch) the bus to school today. It _____ (take) just 40 minutes.
5 I _____ (have) a very busy morning. I _____ (send) 30 emails before 10 o'clock.
6 Our soccer team _____ (win) the game 3–0. Your team _____ (lose) again.
7 My brother _____ (earn) a lot of money at his last job, but he _____ (leave) because he _____ (not like) it.
8 I _____ (study) Chinese for four years, but when I _____ (go) to Shanghai, I _____ (can not) understand a word.

CD2 29 Listen and check.

Talking about you

2 Make true sentences about you using an affirmative or negative.

1 watch TV yesterday
2 get up early this morning
3 have coffee and toast for breakfast
4 come to school by car yesterday
5 play computer games on Friday evening
6 send a text just before this lesson
7 meet some friends last night
8 go shopping yesterday

I watched/didn't watch TV yesterday.

Compare answers with a partner.

3 Work with your partner. Ask and answer questions with *When did you last ...?* and the time expressions. Ask another question to get more information.

- take a vacation
- watch a movie at home
- go to the movies
- talk on your cell phone
- send an email
- catch a bus
- give a present
- have dinner at a restaurant

yesterday ...
morning afternoon evening

last ...
night week weekend
Monday month year
✗ last afternoon ✗ last evening

▶▶ Grammar Reference 6.4 p. 134

4 Tell the class some things you learned about your partner.

Nina took a vacation last August and she went to Costa Rica.

▶▶ WRITING CD2 30 A biography p. 105

LISTENING AND READING

The meaning of life

1 Look at the pictures and read the introduction to the story of *The Businessman and the Fisherman*. Answer the questions.

- Where was the businessman?
- Who did he meet?
- Did he like the fish?
- What did he say?

2 CD2 31 Close your books and listen to the conversation. Who do you think has the best life?

3 Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false sentences.

1 The businessman and the fisherman met in the morning.
2 It took the fisherman an hour to catch the tuna.
3 He stopped fishing because he had enough fish for his family.
4 The fisherman is often bored because he has nothing to do.
5 The businessman went to an excellent college.
6 He gave the fisherman a lot of advice.
7 The fisherman gave the businessman some fish.
8 He went to a restaurant with the businessman.

4 Read and complete the story of *The Businessman and the Fisherman*.

CD2 31 Listen again and check.

5 Retell the story around the class.

What do you think?

- Do you think the fisherman follows the businessman's advice? Why/Why not?
- What is the moral of this story:

"Money makes the world go round."

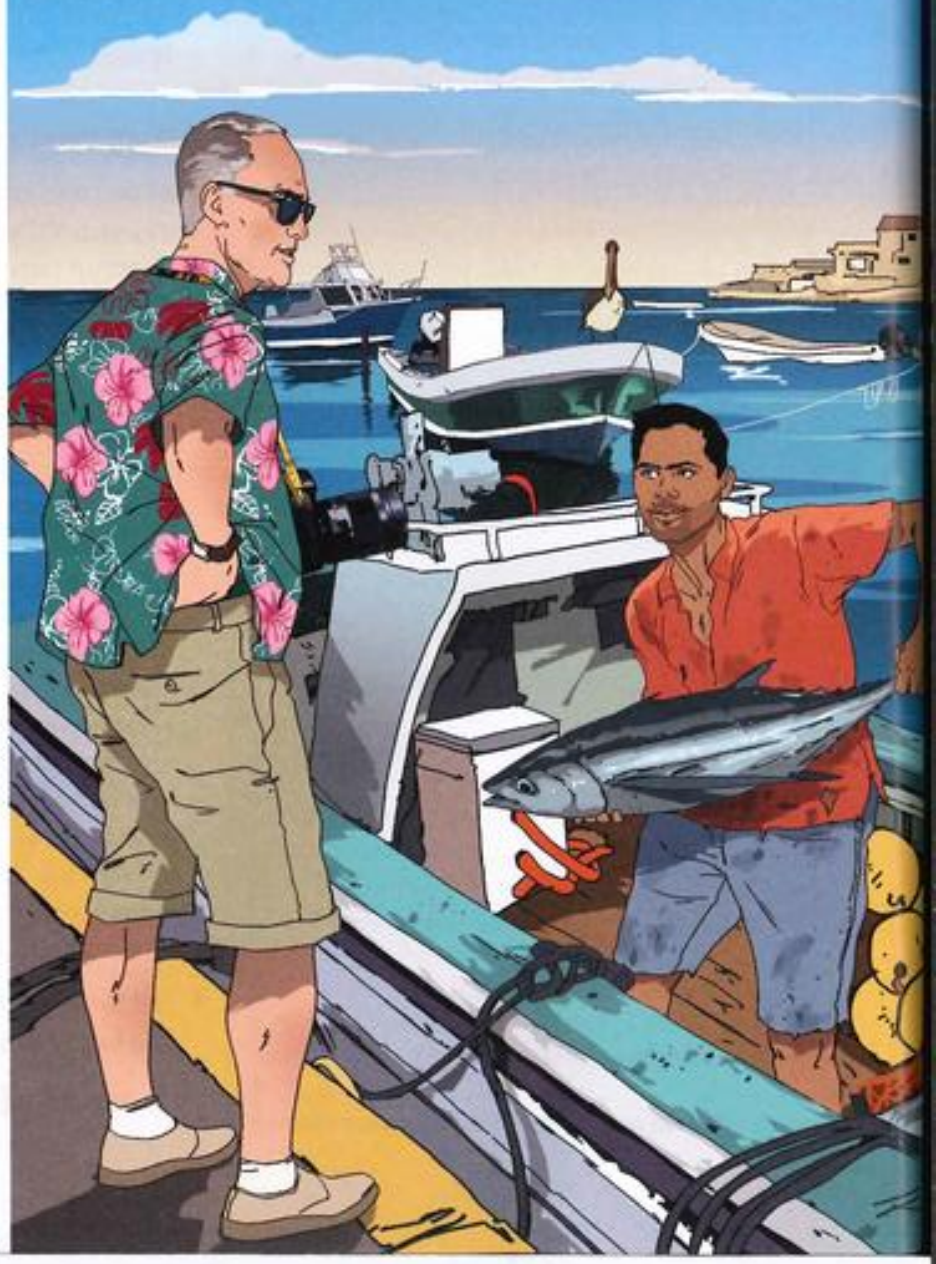
"Understand what really matters in life."

"Don't listen to other people's advice."

"Work more, earn more!"

The Businessman & the Fisherman

A businessman was on vacation in a fishing village. One morning, he met a young fisherman in a small boat with some yellowfin tuna fish. "What beautiful tuna!" the businessman exclaimed.



"How long did it take to catch them?" the businessman asked.
"Oh, about [1]_____ hours," said the fisherman.
"Why didn't you fish for longer and catch more?"
The fisherman replied, "I [2]_____ want to fish for longer. With this I [3]_____ enough fish for my family."
"But what do you do with the rest of your day? Aren't you bored?"
The fisherman smiled, "I'm never bored. I get up [4]_____, play with my children, watch soccer, and take a nap. Sometimes in the evenings I walk to the village to see my friends, play the guitar, and sing [5]_____ songs."

The businessman couldn't understand, "Look, I am a very successful businessman. I [6]_____ to an excellent college and I [7]_____ business. I can help you. Fish for four hours every day and sell the extra fish you catch. Then, you can buy a bigger boat, catch more, and [8]_____ more money. Then buy a second boat, a third, and so on, until you have a big fleet of fishing boats. You can export the fish and leave this village and move to the big city and open a fishing business."
The fisherman smiled, "But how long will all this take?"
The businessman thought about it for a minute. "Probably [9]_____ 15 to 20 years," he said.
"And then what?" asked the fisherman.
"Why, that's the exciting part!" laughed the businessman. "You can sell your business and become very rich, a millionaire!"
"A millionaire? Really? But what do I do with all the money?" The young fisherman didn't look excited.

The businessman could not understand this young man. "Well, you can [10]_____ work and move to a beautiful old fishing village where you can sleep late, play with your grandchildren, watch soccer, take a nap, and walk to the village in the evenings where you can play the guitar, and sing with your friends all you want."
The fisherman's wife and children came running to meet him.
"Daddy, Daddy, [11]_____ you catch many fish?"
"I [12]_____ enough for us today and tomorrow, and also some for this gentleman," said their father. He gave the businessman some fish, thanked him for his advice, and went home with his family.

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Describing feelings

1 Match these feelings to the pictures.

☐ annoyed ☐ excited ☐ tired
☐ bored ☐ interested ☐ worried

2 Use the words from exercise 1 to complete the sentences.

1 I went to bed late last night, so I'm very _____ today.
2 My soccer team lost again. I'm really _____ !
3 I won $20,000 in the lottery. I'm so _____ !
4 I can't find my house keys. I'm really _____ .
5 I have nothing to do and nowhere to go. I am so _____ !
6 The professor gave a great lecture. I was really _____ .

CD2 32 Listen and check.

-ed and *-ing* adjectives

Some adjectives can end in both *-ed* and *-ing*.

The book was **interesting**.	The lesson was **boring**.
I was **interested** in the book.	The students were **bored**.

3 Complete each sentence with the correct adjective.

1 **excited exciting**
Life in New York City is very _____ .
It's my birthday tomorrow. I'm really _____ .

2 **tired tiring**
The marathon runners were very _____ .
That game of tennis was very _____ .

3 **annoyed annoying**
The child's behavior was really _____ .
The teacher was _____ because nobody did the homework.

4 **worried worrying**
We were very _____ when we heard the news.
The news is very _____ .

4 Work with a partner. Complete the conversations with *-ed* and *-ing* adjectives.

1 **A** Did you enjoy the movie?
B No, I didn't. It was _____ .
A Oh, I loved it. It was really _____ , and very funny.
B I didn't laugh once!

2 **C** How was your exam?
D Awful. I'm very _____ .
C But you worked really hard.
D I know, I studied until two in the morning, but then I was so _____ today, I couldn't read the questions.
C Don't worry. I'm sure you'll be OK.

3 **E** That was a great game! Really _____ !
F Only because your team won. I was _____ .
E But it wasn't _____ at all! It was a terrific game!
F Well, I didn't enjoy it, and now I'm _____ because I paid $45 for my ticket.

4 **G** When's Nina's birthday?
H You mean "When *was* her birthday?" It was last Friday, March 24th.
G Oh no! Was she _____ that I forgot?
H No, no, she was just _____ that you didn't like her anymore.

CD2 33 Listen and check. Practice the conversations.

5 Look again at the text on p. 47. Find examples of *-ed* and *-ing* adjectives.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

What's the date?

1 Write the correct word next to the ordinal numbers.

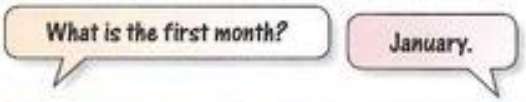
fourth	twelfth	twentieth	twenty-second
second	thirtieth	thirteenth	seventeenth
fifth	tenth	sixteenth	~~first~~
third	sixth	thirty-first	

1st	first
2nd	
3rd	
4th	
5th	
6th	
10th	
12th	
13th	
16th	
17th	
20th	
22nd	
30th	
31st	

CD2 34 Listen and practice saying the ordinals.

2 Say the months of the year around the class.

3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the months.



1 We write: 4/3/1999 or April 3, 1999.
We say: "April third, nineteen ninety-nine." or "The third of April, nineteen ninety-nine."

2 Notice how we say these years.

1900	nineteen hundred
1905	nineteen oh five
2001	two thousand one
2012	two thousand twelve, or twenty twelve

4 Practice saying the dates.

April 1	2/29/76
March 2	12/19/83
September 17	10/3/99
November 9	5/31/2005
	7/15/2015

CD2 35 Listen and check.

5 CD2 36 Listen and write the dates you hear.

1 _____
2 _____
3 _____
4 _____
5 _____
6 _____

6 Ask and answer the questions with your partner.

1 What's the date today?
2 When did this English course start? When does it end?
3 When's the next holiday?
4 When's Valentine's Day?
5 When's your birthday?
6 What are the dates of public holidays in your country?
7 What century is it now?
8 What were some important dates in the last century?

7 Write some important dates for you. Ask and answer questions about the dates with your partner.

Oxford Online Skills Program
Log in for additional online learning

7 Dates to remember

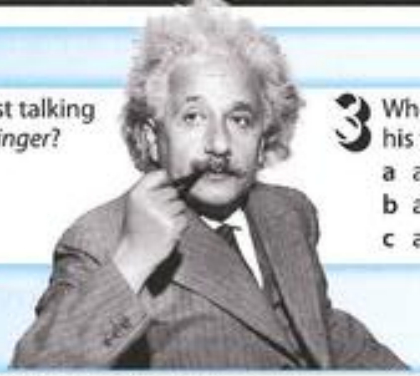
Simple Past (2) • Questions and negatives • Time expressions
Adverbs • Special occasions

STARTER

1 Work in groups. Do the history quiz. Discuss your answers with the class.

20TH CENTURY QUIZ

How much do you know about events in the last century?



1 When did Henry Ford sell the first Model-T motor car?
- a in 1903
- b in 1908
- c in 1910

2 When was the first talking movie, *The Jazz Singer*?
- a in 1903
- b in 1915
- c in 1927

3 When did Einstein publish his theory of relativity?
- a about 100 years ago
- b about 60 years ago
- c about 50 years ago

4 When was the Russian Revolution?
- a in 1909
- b in 1914
- c in 1917

5 When was the first nonstop flight around the world?
- a about 90 years ago
- b about 60 years ago
- c about 30 years ago

6 How many people died in the Second World War?
- a about 20 million
- b about 60 million
- c about 80 million

7 When did the Berlin Wall come down?
- a in 1945
- b in 1975
- c in 1989

8 On what date in 1969 did people first land on the moon?
- a on July 20
- b on May 3
- c on August 13

9 How many number 1 hits did the Beatles have in the US?
- a 12
- b 17
- c 20

10 When did the twentieth century end?
- a at midnight on 12/31/1999
- b at midnight on12/31/2000

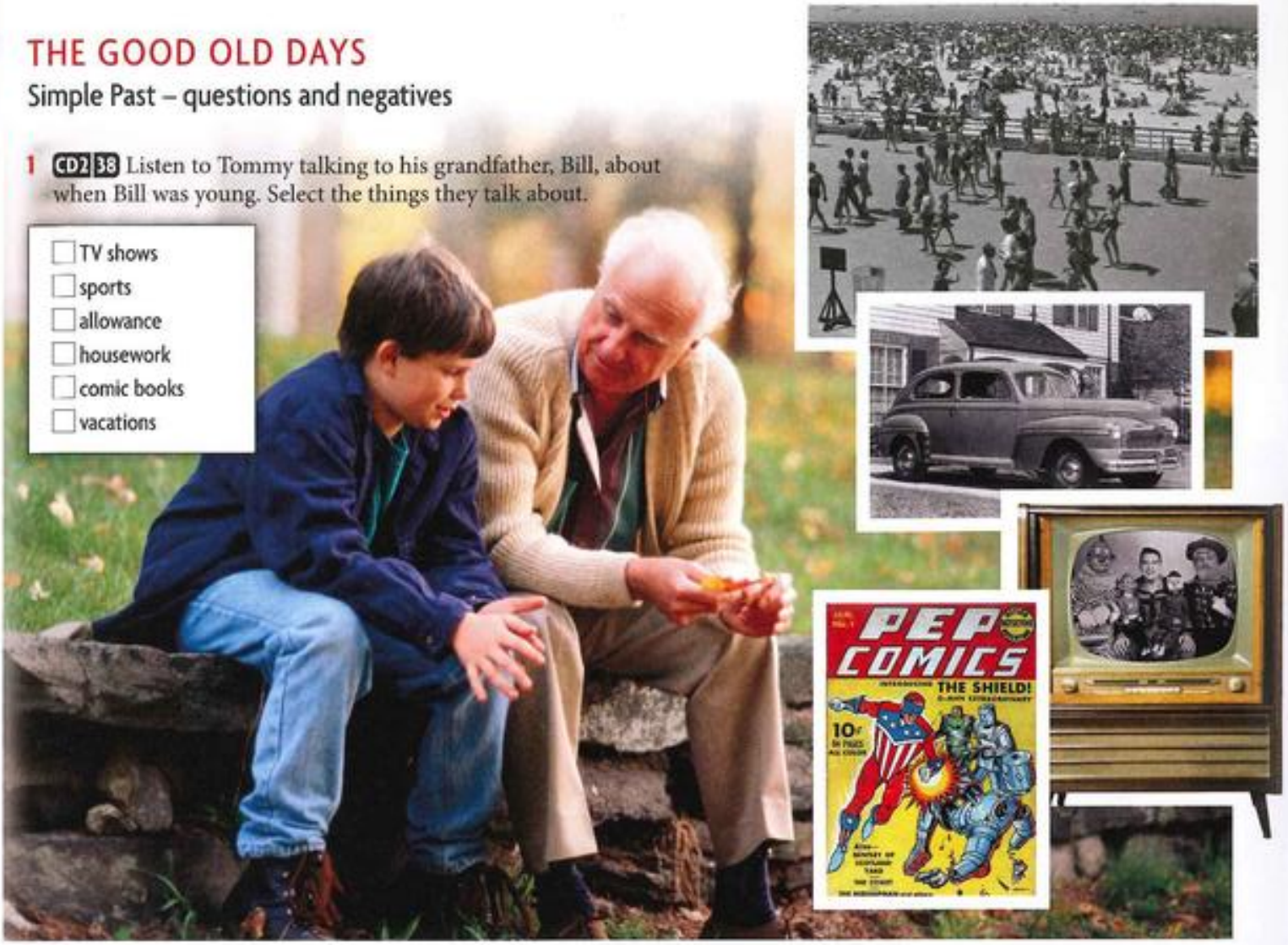
2 CD2 37 Listen and check your answers. Which group won the quiz?

THE GOOD OLD DAYS

Simple Past – questions and negatives

1 CD2 38 Listen to Tommy talking to his grandfather, Bill, about when Bill was young. Select the things they talk about.

- ☐ TV shows
- ☐ sports
- ☐ allowance
- ☐ housework
- ☐ comic books
- ☐ vacations



2 CD2 38 Listen again and complete Tommy's questions.

1 How many TV channels were there?
2 _____ _____ did TV shows start?
3 _____ _____ allowance _____ you get?
4 _____ _____ of comic books _____ you _____?
5 _____ _____ you _____ on vacation?
6 _____ _____ you _____ there?
7 _____ _____ you go to the same place?

CD2 39 Listen and check. With a partner, ask and answer the questions.

3 What did Bill say about these things?

- color TV *It wasn't a color TV like we have now.*
- TV shows
- planes
- his allowance
- dishwashers
- vacations

4 Imagine what Bill said about these things.

- computers *We didn't have computers in those days!*
- cell phones
- fast food
- theme parks

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Write the Simple Past forms.

Simple Present	Simple Past
I want to go.	I wanted to go.
He loves it.	_____
Do you watch TV?	_____
Where does she work?	_____
I don't buy candy.	_____
They don't go on vacation.	_____

2 Complete the time expressions.

Henry Ford sold the first Model-T _____ 1908.
I was born _____ April 17, 1991.
Our classes begin _____ nine o'clock.
Tommy saw Bill two days _____.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 7.1–7.2 p. 135

PRACTICE

1 Match a question word in **A** with a question in **B** and an answer in **C**.

A	B	C
1 Where		A friend from work.
2 When		By bus.
3 Who	did you buy?	Yesterday.
4 How	did you go?	$29.
5 Why	did you go with?	To the mall.
6 What	did you get there?	Because I wanted to.
7 How many	did you pay?	A shirt.
8 How much		Only one.

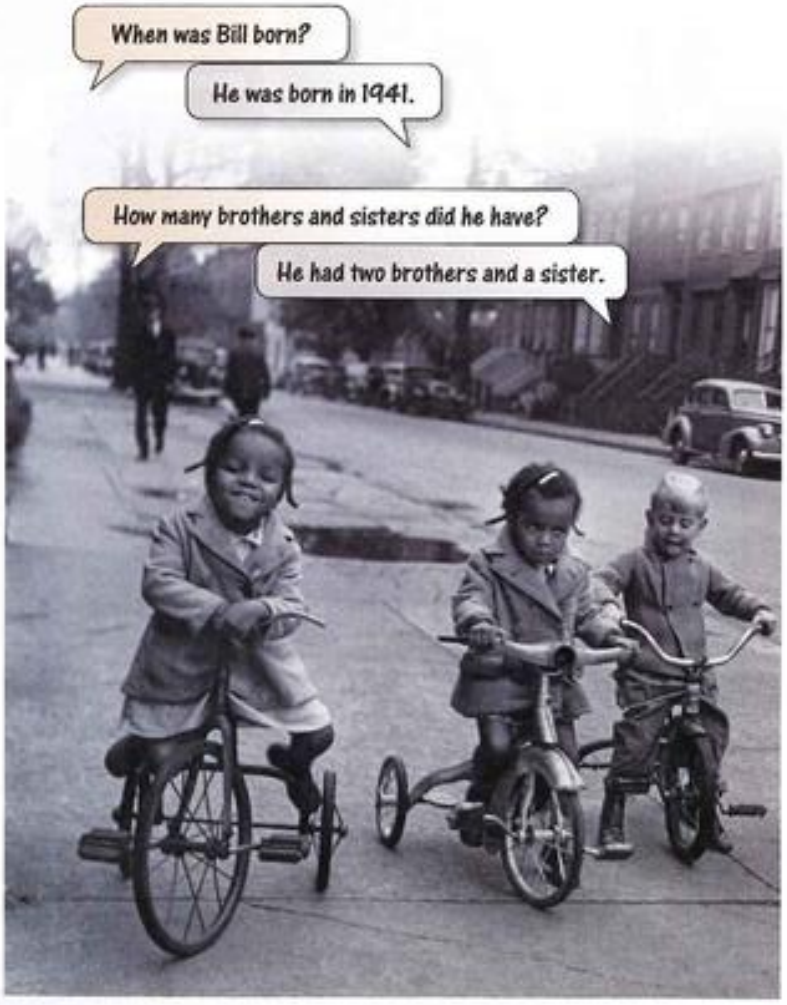
CD2 40 Listen and check. Practice the questions and answers.

Bill's life

2 Work with a partner.

Student A Look at p. 146. **Student B** Look at p. 149.

You have different information about Bill's life. Ask and answer questions.



Time expressions

3 Write the correct preposition.

in at on

_____ seven o'clock	_____ the morning
_____ Saturday	_____ Sunday morning
_____ night	_____ July
_____ 2009	_____ the weekend
_____ summer	_____ the twentieth century

4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions with *When ...?* Use a time expression and *ago* in your answer.

When did ...?

- you get up
- you have breakfast
- you arrive at school
- you start learning English
- you start at this school
- this semester start
- you last use a computer
- you last go on vacation
- you last have a coffee break

When did you get up this morning?
At seven o'clock, three hours ago.
When did this semester start?
In September, two months ago.

5 Tell the class about your day up to now. Begin like this:

I got up at seven o'clock and had breakfast. I left the house at ...

Listening and pronunciation

6 CD2 41 Listen and choose the sentence you hear.

1 a ☐ Where do you want to go?
  b ☐ Why do you want to go?
2 a ☐ I don't go to college.
  b ☐ I didn't go to college.
3 a ☐ Where is he?
  b ☐ Where was he?
4 a ☐ Do you like it?
  b ☐ Did you like it?
5 a ☐ Why did he come?
  b ☐ Why didn't he come?
6 a ☐ She doesn't work there.
  b ☐ She didn't work there.

SPEAKING

Talking about my life

Angela as a child

1 Work with a partner. Frank is at a party talking to Angela. Look at Frank's questions. Use the notes in Angela's answers. What did she say?

F You aren't American, are you, Angela? Where are you from?

A No – Argentinian – born – Córdoba

F Is that where you grew up?

A Yes – lived – parents – two sisters – house near the university – father worked – university

F Oh, how interesting! What was his job? Was he a teacher?

A Yes – professor – psychology

F Really? And what did your mother do?

A doctor – worked – hospital

F So, where did you go to school?

A small private school – ten years – 18 – college

F What did you study?

A philosophy and education – college – Buenos Aires – four years

F Wow! And did you start work after that?

A No – traveled – States – six months – worked – summer camp – Yellowstone National Park – amazing!

F That sounds great! And what's your job now?

A work – junior high school – Brazil – teach Spanish and English

F Your English is really good! Well, it was very nice to meet you, Angela!

A Nice – meet – too. Bye!

CD2 42 Listen and compare.

2 Practice the conversation with a partner. Exchange roles and practice again.

3 Make some notes about your own life story.

4 Work in groups. Tell each other your life stories. Ask and answer questions.

What did you ...?
How long ...?
Who ...?
Did you enjoy it?

Angela at work

READING AND SPEAKING

Sixty years of flight

1 Look at the pictures. Who are the men? What did they do? When did they do it?

2 Read the titles. What was "phenomenal?"

3 Work in two groups.

Group A Read about the first long flight.
Group B Read about the first person on the moon.

Answer the questions.

1 When and where did the flight begin?
2 How long did it take?
3 How far was the flight there?
4 How fast did he/they go?
5 Where did the flight end?
6 In what way was this flight a beginning?

4 Find a partner from the other group. Compare and exchange your answers to exercise 3.

5 Work with the same partner. Look again at the texts and answer these questions.

Blériot

1 Why was Blériot's flight difficult?
2 Was the weather good?
3 How did he know where to land?
4 What did he win?

Apollo 11

5 Why couldn't the astronauts sleep?
6 What did Armstrong say as he stepped onto the moon?
7 How long did they spend walking on the moon's surface?
8 What did they leave on the moon?

Speaking

6 Find the numbers in the texts. What do they refer to?

1909	37	4:30	40	250	1,000	
1969	three	30	8:17	600 million	one	22

CD2 43 Listen and check.

7 Work with a partner. Use the numbers in exercise 6 to help you retell the stories.

PLANES TO

There are just 60 years between the first long

ROCKETS IN SIXTY YEARS

flight and the first person on the moon. In the 20th century, progress in aviation was phenomenal.

On July 25, 1909, a Frenchman, Louis Blériot, became the first person to complete the first long flight when he flew from Calais, in the north of France, to Dover, in the south of England. Blériot's flight amazed all of Europe. People thought that such a flight was impossible.

Louis Blériot

THE FLIGHT

The flight wasn't easy. Mr Blériot, a 37-year-old engineer, couldn't swim, so he didn't want to come down in the English Channel. He couldn't walk very well because of an injury to his leg, and he didn't have a compass.

On the morning of the 25th, he took off at 4:30 from a field at the edge of a cliff. It took 37 minutes to complete the 22-mile trip. The plane flew at 40 miles per hour at an altitude of 250 feet.

Everything went well until he flew into fog. "I continued flying for ten minutes, but I couldn't see the land, only the sky and the sea. It was the most dangerous part of the flight. I wasn't worried about the machine. It flew beautifully. Finally, I saw the land," he told reporters.

LANDING IN ENGLAND

When he got to Dover, he saw a French journalist waving a flag. He cut the engine at 60 feet and crashed into a field. The news quickly went around the world, and Mr Blériot's flight was celebrated in London and Paris. He won a prize of £1,000 (about $1700).

"The crossing was the start of modern aviation," said Louis Blériot, the grandson of the pioneer.

On July 16, 1969, at 9:30 in the morning, Apollo 11 lifted off from the Kennedy Space Center in Florida. There were three astronauts – Neil Armstrong, Buzz Aldrin, and Michael Collins. The enormous rocket took three days to complete the 250,000 miles to the moon, traveling at six miles per second (21,600 miles an hour). Then it circled the moon 30 times, giving time to prepare for the landing.

Neil Armstrong Michael Collins Buzz Aldrin

THE LUNAR LANDING

The lunar module landed on a part of the moon called the Sea of Tranquillity at 8:17 in the evening on July 20.

It was time for the astronauts to rest, but they were too excited to sleep. At 3:00 in the morning on July 21, Neil Armstrong became the first person to walk on the moon. Six hundred million people all over the world watched on TV. As Armstrong took his first steps, he said the famous words, "That's one small step for man, one giant leap for mankind."

WALKING ON THE MOON

Armstrong and Aldrin spent two and a half hours walking on the moon. They collected samples and set up scientific equipment. Finally, they put up a US flag. After 22 hours on the moon, the lunar module lifted off and flew up to join the rocket that took them back to Earth. They left an inscription:

> HERE MEN FROM THE PLANET EARTH FIRST SET FOOT UPON THE MOON, JULY 1969. WE CAME IN PEACE FOR ALL MANKIND.

This flight was the beginning of people's exploration of space.

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Adverbs

1 Look at these sentences from the texts on p. 55. The words in **bold** are adverbs.

Everything went **well** …
It [The plane] flew **beautifully**.
The news **quickly** went around the world …
Finally, they put up a US flag.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Regular adverbs end in *-ly*.

quickly	slowly	carefully
quietly	badly	really

2 There are some common irregular adverbs.

drive **fast**	work **hard**
feel **well**	get up **early/late**

▶▶ Grammar Reference 7.3 p. 135

2 Are the words in *italics* adjectives or adverbs? Mark the sentence *Adj.* or *Adv.*

1 a Smoking is a *bad* habit.
  b We lost the game because we played *badly*.
2 a Please listen *carefully*.
  b Jane's a *careful* driver.
3 a It's a *hard* life.
  b I work *hard* and play *hard*.

3 Match a **verb** with an **adverb**. Sometimes there is more than one possible answer.

Verbs	Adverbs
work	fluently
speak English	carefully
breathe	fast
do my homework	late
drive	hard
arrive	deeply

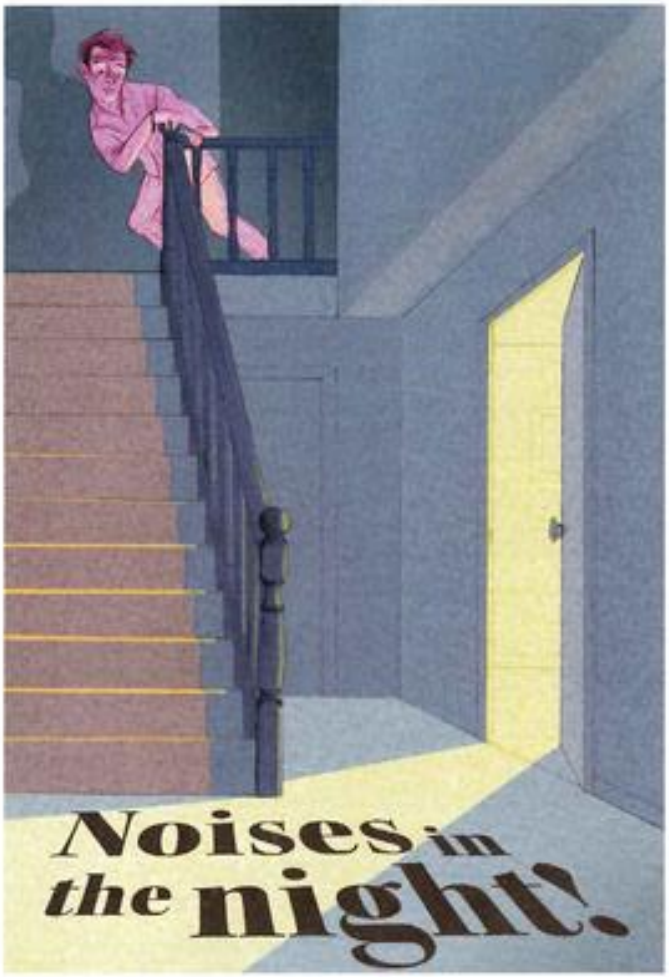
4 Put the word in parentheses into the correct place in the sentence.

1 We had a vacation in Peru. (terrible)
2 I lost my passport. (unfortunately)
3 I contacted the police. (immediately)
4 It was a trip because the traffic was bad. (long)
5 Fortunately, Abby's a driver. (good)
6 She speaks Spanish. (well)

Telling a story

5 Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

1 It started to rain, but fortunately, I had an umbrella.
2 James invited me to his party, but unfortunately, …
3 Suddenly, six friends arrived for lunch. Fortunately, …
4 I saw a beautiful pair of shoes in a store. Unfortunately, …
5 I was fast asleep, when suddenly …
6 I saw the accident happen. Immediately, …
7 When I met her at the party, my heart stopped. I really …
8 I heard a noise, got out of bed, and went slowly …



6 CD2 44 Look at the picture and listen to the man. What did he hear in the middle of the night?

7 CD2 44 Listen again. Number the adverbs 1–8 in the order you hear them.

☐ quickly	☐ quietly	☐ slowly	☐ suddenly
☐ immediately	☐ carefully	☐ fortunately	☐ really

8 Work with a partner. Take turns retelling the story. Use the adverbs to help.

▶▶ WRITING Telling a story p. 106

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Special occasions

1 Look at the list of days. Which are the special days? Match them with the pictures.

birthday	yesterday	Thanksgiving	Mother's Day	Halloween	New Year's Eve	today
Monday	Valentine's Day	weekend	Friday	wedding day	tomorrow	graduation

2 Which days do you celebrate in your country? What do you do on these days?

make a cake	wear special clothes	give cards and presents	give flowers or chocolates
have a special meal	have a party	go out with friends	have fireworks

3 Complete the lines. What are the occasions?

1 Happy _____ to you,
Happy _____ to you,
Happy _____, dear Grandma,
Happy _____ to you.

2 **A** Did you get any _____ cards?
B Yes, I did. Listen to this.
Roses are red, violets are blue.
You are my _____,
And I love you.
A Wow! Do you know who it's from?
B No idea.

3 **C** You're in 11th grade, right, Laura?
D Actually, I'm in 12th. I'm almost done with school.
C Oh, really? Congratulations! When is your _____?
D It's next Sunday.

4 **E** Congratulations! That's great news!
F Thank you very much. We're both very happy.
E So, when's the big day?
G Excuse me?
E Your _____ day! When is it?
F December 12th. You'll get an invitation!

5 **H** It's midnight! Happy _____ _____, everyone!
I/J/K _____ _____ _____!

6 **L** Wake up, Mommy! Happy _____!
M Thank you, honey. Oh, what beautiful flowers! And a cup of coffee! Well, aren't I lucky!
L And we made you a card! Look!
M It's beautiful! What creative children you are!

7 **N** Thank goodness it's Friday!
O Yeah! Have a good _____!
N You too.

4 CD2 45 Listen and check. Work with a partner. Memorize some of the conversations.

Oxford Online Skills Program
Log in for additional online learning

8 Eat in or out?

Count and noncount nouns • *some* and *any* • *I like* and *I'd like*
How much? or *How many?* • Food and drink • Shopping on Main Street

STARTER

1 Look at the pictures. Which foods did you like as a young child? Which *didn't* you like? Were you a picky eater? Tell the class.

2 Match the food and drinks with the pictures.
CD2 46 Listen. Then say the lists aloud as a class.

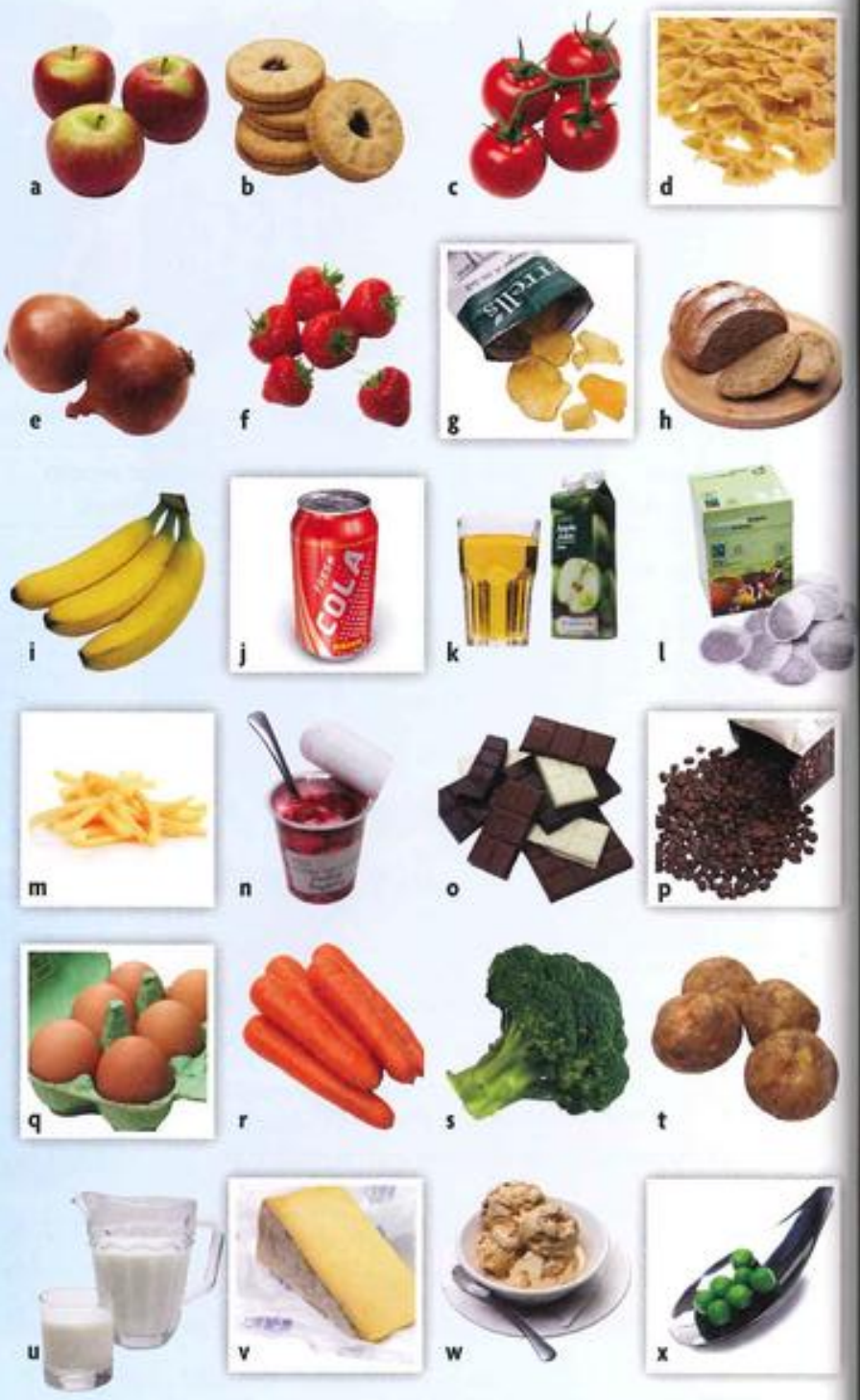
A	B
☐ tea	☐ bananas
☐ coffee	☐ apples
☐ soda	☐ strawberries
☐ cheese	☐ potatoes
☐ yogurt	☐ carrots
☐ pasta	☐ peas
☐ ice cream	☐ onions
☐ apple juice	☐ tomatoes
☐ bread	☐ eggs
☐ milk	☐ cookies
☐ chocolate	☐ chips
☐ broccoli	☐ French fries

3 Which list, **A** or **B**, has plural nouns?
Complete these sentences with *is* or *are*.

Broccoli _____ good for you.
Tomatoes _____ good for you.
Apple juice _____ delicious.
Apples _____ delicious.

Can we count broccoli? Can we count tomatoes?

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 8.1 p. 135**



WHO'S A PICKY EATER?

Count and noncount nouns – *some, any, a lot of . . .*

1 CD2 47 Evan and Nick are students. Listen to their conversation.

- Who is the picky eater?
- What didn't Evan like when he was a kid? What did he like?
- Where do they go to eat?

2 CD2 47 Listen again and complete the sentences.

1 "Oh, good, we have *some* tomatoes."
2 "I didn't like a _____ of things when I was a kid."
3 "I didn't like _____ green vegetables."
4 "Did you like _____ vegetables at all?"
5 "I liked _____ fruit, but not all."
6 "I drank a _____ of apple juice."
7 "I liked _____ the usual things kids like."

GRAMMAR SPOT

Read the sentences. When do we use *some* and *any*?

There's **some** soda.	There are **some** tomatoes.
There isn't **any** milk.	There aren't **any** apples.
Is there **any** coffee?	Are there **any** bananas?

▶▶ Grammar Reference 8.2 p. 135

I like ... and I'd like ...

3 CD2 48 Evan and Nick are in Romano's Italian restaurant. Read and listen to their conversation with the server.

S Good evening, guys. Are you ready to order?
E I think we are. What would you like, Nick?
N Pasta, of course. I love pasta. I'd like the spaghetti with meat sauce.
E Same for me, please. I really like spaghetti.
S Great! And would you like a starter?
E I'd like a small salad, please, but without tomatoes. How about you, Nick? Would you like a salad?
N Yes, but I'd like it *with* tomatoes, if that's OK.
S Sure, that's fine.
N Oh, and can we have some water, please?
S Of course. Would you like tap or bottled water?
E Just some tap water, thanks.
S No problem.

4 Read the sentences. Are the sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false ones.

1 Evan and Nick both order the same meal.
2 Evan doesn't like spaghetti very much.
3 They would both like a salad.
4 Nick doesn't like tomatoes.
5 They don't want any water.
6 Evan would like some bottled water.

5 Practice the conversation with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Which pair of sentences means *Do you want/I want ...?*

Do you **like** coffee?	**Would** you **like** some coffee?
I **like** apples.	**I'd like** a small salad, please.

2 We use *some*, not *any*, when we request and offer things.
Would you like **some** coffee? Can we have **some** water?

3 We use *any*, not *some*, in other questions and negatives.
There aren't **any** tomatoes. Is there **any** pasta?

▶▶ Grammar Reference 8.2–8.3 p. 135

PRACTICE

Would/Do you like ...?

1 Choose *Would/Do you like ...?* or *I/I'd like ...*

1 Excuse me, are you ready to order?
Yes. *I like / I'd like* a steak, please.

2 *Would / Do* you like a sandwich?
No, thanks. I'm not hungry.

3 *Do / Would* you like Liz?
Yes. She's very nice.

4 *Do / Would* you like a cold drink?
Yes, please. Do you have any apple juice?

5 Can I help you?
Yes. *I like / I'd like* some stamps, please.

6 What sports do you do?
Well, *I'd like / I like* skiing very much.

CD2 49 Listen and check. Practice with a partner.

2 CD2 50 Listen to some questions. What are the correct replies?

1 ☐ I like dark roast coffee.
☐ I'd like a cup of dark roast coffee.

2 ☐ Just turkey, please. I don't like cheese.
☐ I'd like a turkey and cheese sandwich.

3 ☐ I'd like a book by Patricia Cornwell.
☐ I like books by Patricia Cornwell.

4 ☐ I'd like a new computer.
☐ I like tablets more than laptops.

5 ☐ No, but I'd like a dog.
☐ I like dogs, but I don't like cats much.

6 ☐ No, thanks. I don't like ice cream.
☐ I'd like some ice cream, please.

CD2 51 Listen and check. Practice with your partner.

a or *some*?

3 Write *a*, *an*, or *some*.

1	a banana	7	_____ apple
2	some fruit	8	_____ toast
3	_____ egg	9	_____ sandwiches
4	_____ bread	10	_____ cookies
5	_____ milk	11	_____ cup of coffee
6	_____ meat	12	_____ apple juice

EATING IN

some/any, much/many

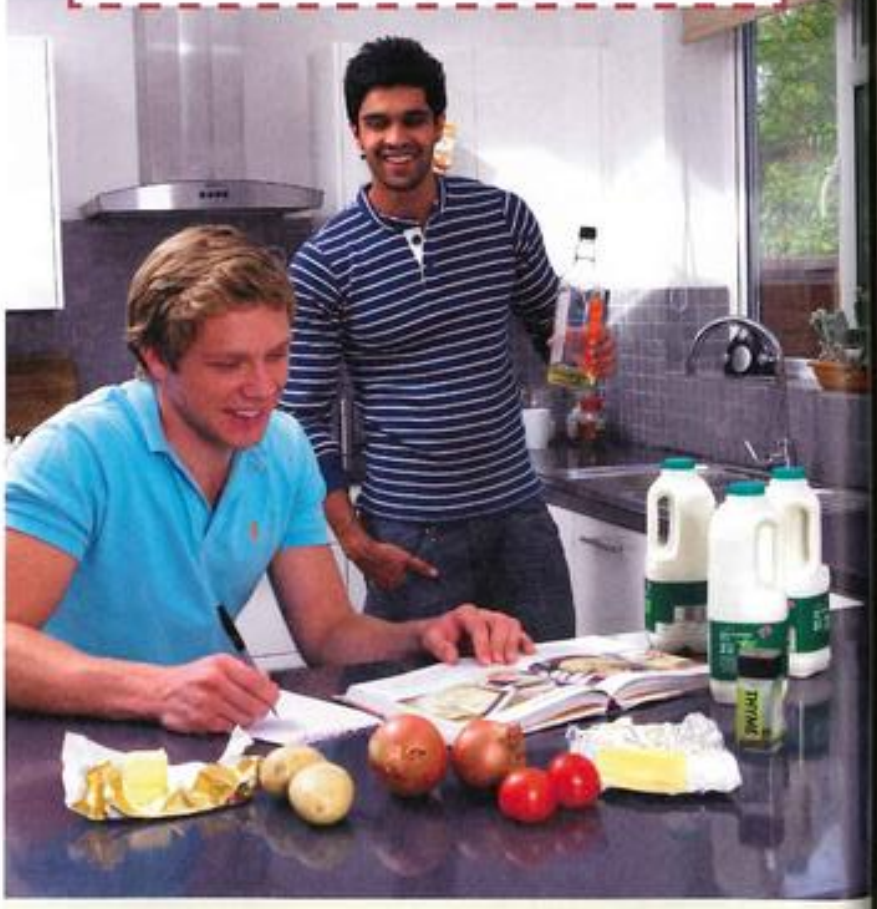
1 Evan and Nick want to cook shepherd's pie for their friends. Look at the recipe. What do they need?

They need onions, ground beef, ...

SHEPHERD'S PIE

Ingredients
2 medium onions, chopped
1.5 lbs ground beef
2 tsp vegetable oil
2 medium carrots, chopped
4 tomatoes
1 tbsp thyme
Salt and black pepper

Topping
4 large potatoes
4 tbsp (half a stick) butter
1/4 lb Cheddar cheese
3 tsp milk



2 Work with a partner. Look at their kitchen counter. What do they already have for the recipe? Use *some/any* and *not much/not many*.

There is some butter. There isn't much cheese. There aren't any carrots.

3 Complete Evan and Nick's conversation with *some/any* and *much/many*.

N This recipe for shepherd's pie looks easy.

E But I can't cook at all.

N Don't worry. I really like cooking.
Now, vegetables – do we have __any__ onions?
Are there _____ carrots or potatoes?

E Well, there are _____ onions, but there aren't _____ carrots, and we don't have _____ potatoes. How _____ do we need?

N Four big ones.

E OK, put potatoes on your list.

N And how _____ tomatoes are there?

E Only two small ones. Put them on the list too.

N How _____ milk is there?

E There's a lot, but there isn't _____ cheese or butter.

N OK, cheese and butter. What about herbs? Do we have _____ thyme?

E Yeah, we do. But don't forget the ground beef. How _____ do we need?

N A pound and a half. Now, is that everything?

E Uh – I think so. Do we have vegetable oil? Oh yeah, there's _____ left in the bottle.

N OK, first shopping, then I'll give you a cooking lesson!

E Great! I hope Sarah and Lizzie like shepherd's pie.

N Everyone likes shepherd's pie!

CD2 52 Listen and check. Practice with your partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 We use *many* with count nouns in questions and negatives.
How **many** potatoes are there? There **aren't many** onions.

2 We use *much* with noncount nouns in questions and negatives.
How **much** butter is there? There **isn't much** oil.

3 In the affirmative we use *a lot of*.
There are **a lot of** tomatoes. There's **a lot of** milk.

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 8.4 p. 135**

PRACTICE

much or *many*?

1 Complete the questions using *much* or *many*.

1 How __much__ toast would you like?
2 How _____ yogurt do we have left?
3 How _____ people were at the wedding?
4 How _____ money do you have in your pocket?
5 How _____ gas is there in the car?
6 How _____ children does your brother have?
7 How _____ days is it until your birthday?
8 How _____ time do you need for this exercise?

2 Choose an answer for each question in exercise 1.

a ___ Just 50 cents.
b ___ It's tomorrow!
c __1__ Just one slice, please.
d ___ Not a lot. Just a little strawberry.
e ___ Two more minutes.
f ___ Two. A boy and a girl.
g ___ About 150.
h ___ It's full.

CD2 53 Listen and check. Practice with a partner.

Check it

3 Choose the correct word.

1 How many *eggs / butter / milk* do you need?
2 We don't have much *cookies / cheese / potatoes* left.
3 I'm hungry. I'd like a *sandwich / bread / apple*.
4 I'd like *a / some / any* fruit, please.
5 I don't like *broccoli / an ice cream / some turkey*.
6 Would you like some *tea / sandwich / vegetable*?
7 How many *money / cousins / family* do you have?
8 We have *no / much / many* homework today.

Speaking

4 Work in small groups. Who can cook? Look at the picture of the shepherd's pie. How do you think it is made? You can use these verbs.

chop	fry	boil	mix	add

Check the recipe on p. 151.

Project

What are your favorite recipes? Choose one. Find out the ingredients you need and how you make it. Tell the other students.

▶▶ **WRITING Two emails** *p. 108*

READING AND SPEAKING

Everybody likes a sandwich!

1 When did you last have a sandwich? What was in it?

2 Read the text quickly. Find these names.

- Hillel the Elder
- John Montague
- Eliza Leslie
- Dagwood Bumstead

Who are the people? What is their connection to the sandwich?

3 Read the text again. Work with a partner to complete the sentences with information from the text.

1 Hillel the Elder made his sandwich with nuts, apples and spices, and …
2 "Trenchers" were the first …
3 The Earl of Sandwich sometimes liked to … at the same time.

The Earl of Sandwich

4 The Beef Steak Club chefs put … two slices of bread.
5 Eliza Leslie's recipe for … was very popular in America.
6 Sandwiches became popular worldwide because …
7 Dagwood Bumstead is …
8 The Dagwood sandwich is made with … of meat, cheese, and vegetables.

4 How many kinds of sandwich can you think of? Write them down. Share ideas with the class.

The History of the Sandwich

1st Century BC

A famous leader, Hillel the Elder, made the first recorded sandwich. He mixed some nuts, apples, and spices, and put it between two matzohs (pieces of flat bread).

6th – 16th Century

People used bread as plates. They put meat and vegetables onto some bread and ate with their fingers. These were the first open sandwiches, and they called them "trenchers."

18th Century

No one is sure when the word "sandwich" first appeared. But many people think this is how the sandwich got its name: An Englishman, John Montague (1718–1792), the Fourth Earl of *Sandwich, liked to eat and play cards at London's Beef Steak Club. Sometimes he stayed at the card table for 24 hours. He was hungry, but he didn't want to stop playing, so the chefs from the club put some beef between two pieces of bread, and he ate while he played. This new meal became very popular with other men in the club, and they called it the "sandwich" after the Earl.

* Sandwich is a town in the South of England.

19th Century

An American writer, Eliza Leslie, introduced sandwiches to America. In 1837, she wrote a cookbook and in it she had a recipe for sandwiches: "Cut some thin slices of bread and meat. Butter the bread and put the meat between two slices with some mustard. Eat for lunch or supper." Americans loved them.

20th – 21st Century

Sandwiches became very popular. They were easy to make and they were a wonderful, cheap, portable meal for workers and school children.

Did you know...?

The "Dagwood" sandwich is the sandwich to top all sandwiches. It is enormous! Named after the American cartoon character Dagwood Bumstead, it is made with many layers of meat, cheese, tomatoes, egg, lettuce, and vegetables.

LISTENING

5 Believe it or not, there is a *World Sandwich Week*! In a survey, people were asked, *What's your favorite sandwich?*

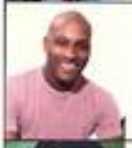
CD2 54 Listen and complete the chart with words from the box.

noodles	roast beef	cheese	chips	steak
vegetables	onions	mayonnaise	tomatoes	peanut butter
chicken	mackerel	olives	egg	salt and pepper

What's your favorite sandwich?

Linh from Vietnam
vegetables and chicken

Larissa from Brazil
_____



Dylan from Philadelphia, US
_____

Kumiko from Japan
_____

John in Turkey
_____

6 What is your favorite sandwich? Discuss with the class.

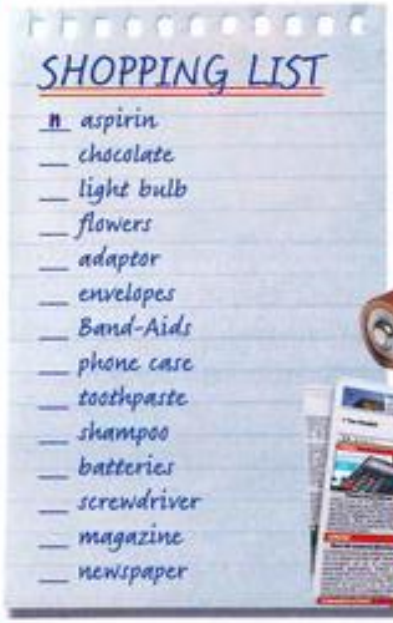
What do you think?

- Which of the sandwiches in exercise 5 would you like to try?
- Do you eat sandwiches often? When?
- What are the most popular sandwiches in your country?

VOCABULARY AND PRONUNCIATION

Daily needs

1 Match the items from the shopping list with the pictures.



2 CD2 55 Listen to the items. Write them in the correct column.

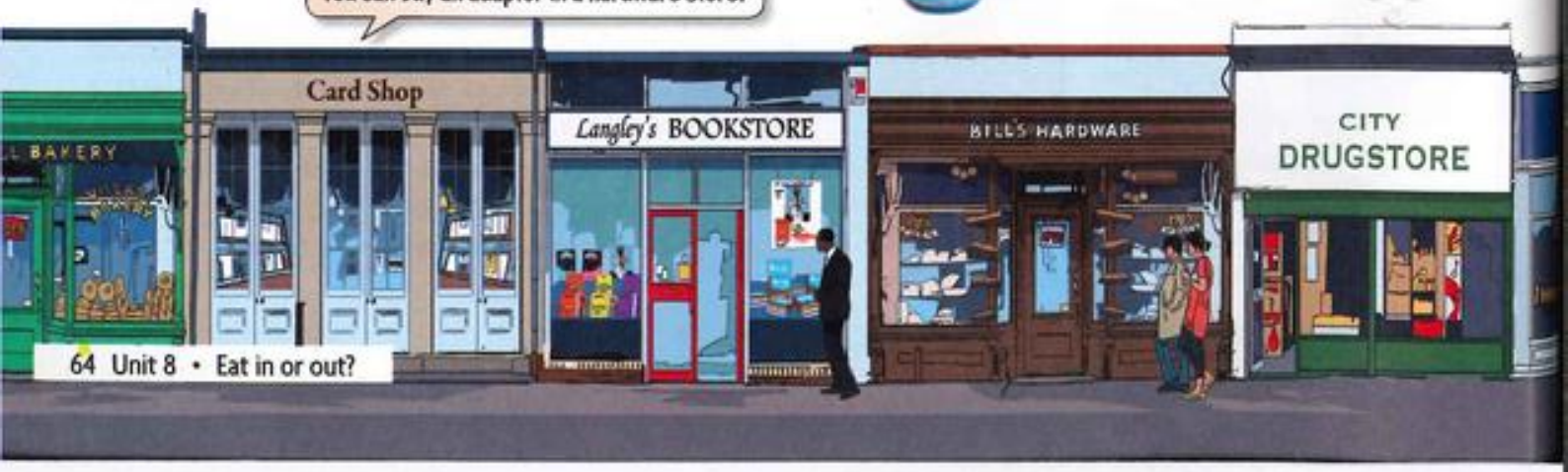
●•	•●	●••	•●•	••●
aspirin				

CD2 55 Listen again, and repeat the words.

3 You can buy all the things in the pictures in a supermarket. Which Main Street stores can you also buy them in?

bookstore	hardware shop	drugstore	card shop

You can buy an adaptor in a hardware store.



EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Shopping on Main Street

1 CD2 56 Listen and complete the conversations with the words in the boxes.

1 | too much | better | only |

A I'd like some flowers, please. How much are the roses?

B They're $36 a dozen.

A Oh, that's _____. I can't spend that much.

B Well, how about some tulips? They're _____ $15 a dozen.

A That's much _____. I'll take a dozen.

2 | too many | enough | kind |

C Can I help you find something?

D Yes, I need a light bulb.

C What _____ do you need?

D A 13 watt mini bulb.

C OK. Let's see… here's a pack of six.

D Thanks. But that's _____… I just need one.

C Oh, sorry, we don't sell them individually. Not _____ people want to buy only one.

3 | else | too big | all |

E Do you have any cases for this phone?

F Let me see… yes, here's one. It's very popular.

E Thanks. Uh, actually it's _____.

F Oh, sorry. I can order a small one for you.

E Uh, no thanks.

F OK. Anything _____?

E That's _____, thanks.

2 Work with a partner. Memorize two of the conversations. Act them out in front of the class.

3 Have similar conversations using other things on the shopping list on p. 64.

Sounding polite

4 CD2 57 Listen, and look at these sentences from conversations in a café. Which sound more polite?

I'd like a coffee, please.
I want a latte.
Give me some cake with that!
Can I have a sandwich?
A cup of tea.
Could you bring me a smoothie?

5 Complete the conversation in a café.

A Hi! What can I get you?

B I'd like _____ a latte, please.

A Sure. For here or to go?

B For here.

A And what size do you want? Small, medium, or large?

B _____, please.

A Would you like anything to eat? A croissant? A bagel?

B _____ a bagel, please. Toasted.

A No problem.

B _____ some butter with the bagel?

A Sure. Have a seat and I'll bring it over.

CD2 58 Listen and compare. Practice the conversation. Try to sound polite.

6 Have similar conversations in a café with different things to eat and drink.

Oxford Online Skills Program
Log in for additional online learning

9 City living

Comparative and superlative adjectives
City and small town • Directions

The Empire State Building, New York City

The Eiffel Tower, Paris

STARTER

1 Think of a town or city in your country. Say where it is.
It's in the north/south/east/west *... near the mountains/ocean* *... on a river ...*

2 CD3 2 Listen to the descriptions of two cities. Which cities are they?

NEW YORK AND PARIS

Comparative adjectives

1 CD3 3 Read and listen to the conversation.

A Which do you prefer, New York or Paris?
B Well, I'm from Paris, so of course I love Paris.
A New York's a lot **bigger than** Paris.
B That's true. Paris is much **smaller**, but it's **more romantic**!
A Yes, that's what people say.
B And the food is **better**.
A Well, I'm not so sure about that ...

Practice the conversation. What are the differences between New York and Paris? *New York's bigger than Paris.*

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Regular comparative adjectives add *-er* or *more*. Write the comparative forms.
big bigger romantic _____ small _____
What are the rules? When do we add *-er*? When do we use *more*?

2 Some adjectives are irregular. good better bad _____

▶▶ Grammar Reference 9.1 p. 136

2 What is the comparative form of the adjectives in the box?
tall – taller *expensive – more expensive*

tall	expensive	hot	cheap	nice	rainy	warm	cold	polite	beautiful	bad	good

Work with a partner. Test each other on the comparative forms. Check the spelling.

3 Look at the pictures of New York and Paris. Compare the two cities. Use *I think* … and the adjectives from exercise 2.

- the Empire State Building/the Eiffel Tower
  I think the Empire State Building is taller than the Eiffel Tower.
- the Métro/the New York City Subway – €€€? $$$?
  I think the Métro is …
- the weather – warm? rainy?
  I think Paris has …
- the buildings
  I think the buildings …
- the parks
  I think the parks …

CD3 4 Listen and compare. Practice the sentences.

4 CD3 5 Listen to Rob, a New Yorker who lives and works in Paris. Complete his sentences.

1 The New York City Subway is *cheaper* than the Métro.
2 New York has _____ winters than Paris.
3 Paris is _____ than New York, but New York has _____ storms.
4 The architecture in Paris is _____ _____, but the buildings in New York are _____ _____.
5 Life is _____ in New York.
6 People in New York work _____ and they make _____ money.
7 In Paris, having a good time is _____ _____ than making a lot of money.

5 Work with a partner. Close your books. Try to remember what Rob said.

PRACTICE

Comparing cities

1 Complete the conversations using the comparative form of the adjectives.

1 **A** Dubai is *older* *than* Rio de Janeiro. (old)
  B No, it isn't! Dubai is much *more* *modern*! (modern)
2 **A** Tokyo is _____ _____ Bangkok. (cheap)
  B No, it isn't! Tokyo's much _____ _____! (expensive)
3 **A** Seoul is _____ _____ Beijing. (big)
  B No, it isn't! Seoul is much _____! (small)
4 **A** Miami is _____ _____ Los Angeles. (safe)
  B No, it isn't! It's much _____ _____! (dangerous)
5 **A** Taxi drivers in New York are _____ _____ taxi drivers in London. (good)
  B No, they aren't! They're much _____! (bad)

CD3 6 Listen and check.

2 Work with a partner. Practice the conversations in exercise 1. Be careful with stress and intonation.

Dubai is much more modern!

3 Work in small groups. Compare two cities you know.

… is bigger than … *… is nearer the …* *…, but … is safer …*

NEW YORK'S BEST FOOD MARKET

Superlative adjectives

1 Look at the introduction to the text about Chelsea Market. Complete the chart.

Adjectives	Superlatives
1 good	best
2 big	_____
3 popular	_____
4 busy	_____

2 Read the rest of the text. Complete it with the adjective in the superlative.

3 What's special about ...?

- Chelsea *It's the best place in the city to have lunch.*
- Chelsea Market
- the food
- Iron Chef
- weekends
- the High Line

CD3 7 Listen and check.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Look at the superlatives in exercise 1. What are the rules?

2 What are the comparative and superlative forms of these adjectives?

small	expensive	hot
easy	beautiful	

▶▶ Grammar Reference 9.1 p. 136

CHELSEA MARKET

The neighborhood of Chelsea is the best place in New York City to have lunch. And Chelsea Market is New York's biggest and most popular indoor food market. It has more than 35 food shops and restaurants. It also has a bookstore, a clothing store, and a gift shop. There are usually a lot of people at the market, but it's busiest at lunchtime and on weekends.

Chelsea is one of New York's [1]_____ (old) neighborhoods. Five to six million people a year visit Chelsea Market to shop, eat, and meet friends. The food is amazing, but it isn't the [2]_____ (cheap) in the city. There's candy, ice cream, soup, fresh seafood, New York's [3]_____ (delicious) brownies, and more!

People often buy food at the market and bring it to the High Line to eat. The High Line is a mile-long elevated park near Chelsea Market. It is New York's [4]_____ (new) and [5]_____ (unique) park. The High Line and Chelsea Market are very popular with both tourists and locals.

Chelsea Market even has a TV network. The Food Network films some of its TV cooking shows at Chelsea Market. Try to get tickets to watch *Iron Chef*, one of TV's [6]_____ (good) cooking shows!

A PARISIAN IN NEW YORK

4 CD3 8 Listen to Chantal, a French woman. Where does she live and work? Is she married?

5 CD3 8 Listen again and complete the answers. Practice the questions and answers with a partner.

Hi! I'm Chantal!

Q Where do you live in New York?

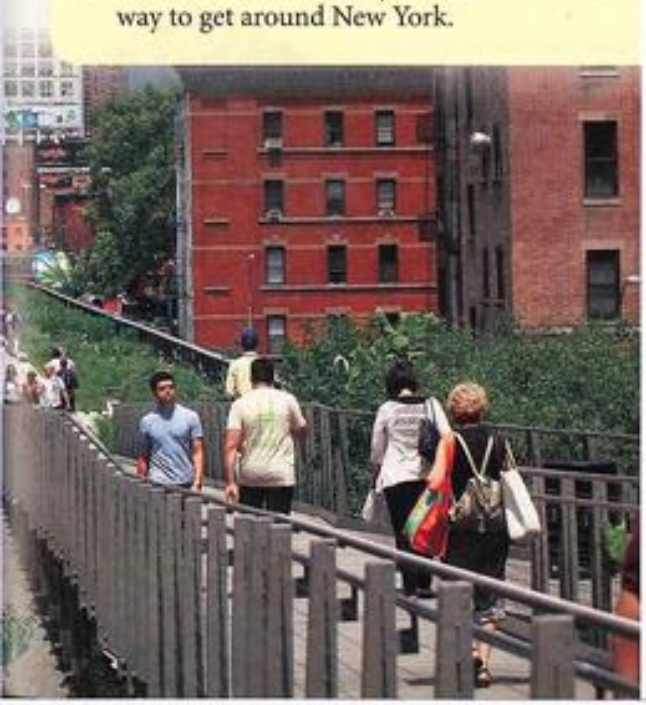
C Well, we're renting an apartment in Chelsea. It's probably the _____ apartment in the city!

Q What does your husband do?

C He has a cheese shop in Chelsea Market… he sells French cheese. I think it's the _____ food at the market!

Q Do you have a car?

C No, I don't. The subway is the _____ way to get around New York.



PRACTICE

It's the biggest!

1 Complete these sentences with a superlative adjective.

1 The _tallest_ building in New York is One World Trade Center. It's 1,776 feet (541 meters).
2 The _____ hotel is the The St. Regis. It costs more than $800 a night!
3 The _____ park in New York is Central Park. It's 843 acres (341 hectares).
4 The _____ tourist attraction is Times Square. It has 39,000,000 visitors a year.
5 The _____ building is the Empire State Building. Everyone knows it.
6 The _____ restaurant for spotting celebrities is *Nobu*. They all go there.

CD3 9 Listen and check. Make sentences about your town.

Making comparisons

2 Complete the sentences with an opposite comparative adjective.

1 The music here is too **loud**. Can we go somewhere _quieter_?
2 The 10:00 train is too **slow**. Is the 11:30 train a _____ one?
3 You're **late**. Why weren't you here _____?
4 This apartment is too **far** from the center of town. I need somewhere _____.
5 Five minutes is too **short** for a break. We need a _____ one.
6 This exercise is too **easy**. Can I do something _____?

Check it

3 Choose the correct sentence.

1 ☐ Yesterday was more hot than today.
☐ Yesterday was hotter than today.
2 ☐ She's taller than her brother.
☐ She's taller that her brother.
3 ☐ I am the most young in the class.
☐ I am the youngest in the class.
4 ☐ This exercise is most difficult in the book.
☐ This exercise is the most difficult in the book.
5 ☐ This is the coldest day of the winter.
☐ This is the most coldest day of the winter.
6 ☐ What is the more beautiful park in the city?
☐ What is the most beautiful park in the city?
7 ☐ That's the most expensive restaurant in town.
☐ That's the expensivest restaurant in town.

READING AND LISTENING

Megacities

1 Look at the list of megacities. Put them in order of size of population: 1 = the biggest.

☐ Mumbai ☐ Shanghai ☐ Tokyo
☐ New York ☐ Mexico City ☐ Delhi

CD3 10 Listen. Were you right? What is a megacity? What happened in 2008?

2 Look at the photos. What can you see?
Look at the title of each article. Which city …?

- is very fast
- has a mix of cultures
- has a lot of poverty

3 Work in three groups.

Group A Read about **Tokyo**.
Group B Read about **Mumbai**.
Group C Read about **Mexico City**.

Make notes about your city under these headings:

The city and its people
Money and business
Buildings and history
Climate
Transportation

4 Work with students from the other two groups. Exchange and compare information about the cities.

Listening

5 CD3 11 Listen to these people from the three megacities. What do they like about their capital city? What do they say about …?

- the people
- the climate
- transportation
- things to do

Makiko from Tokyo

Vimahl from Mumbai

Lourdes from Mexico City

Project

Research another megacity. Make some notes. Present your findings to the rest of the class.

HIGH-SPEED TOKYO

Tokyo has a population of more than 35 million people. It is the largest city in the world. It is also one of the most exciting. Everything moves fast here. It has one of the biggest and busiest railroad systems in the world. Every day, 40 million commuters use it to get to and from work. People make the highest salaries, and they spend the most money. They wear the latest fashions and have the most up-to-date phones. It is one of the most expensive cities in the world.

Old and new

Tokyo was originally a small fishing village called Edo. The name changed in 1868 when the Emperor moved there.
The architecture is very modern. There are not many old buildings because of the 1923 earthquake and the Second World War. But traditional Japan is always nearby, with many Shinto shrines and public baths around the city.

Visiting Tokyo

Tokyo is on the east coast of Japan. The summers are hot and humid. The most beautiful time of year is spring, when the famous cherry blossoms are on the trees.
The city is huge, but it is one of the safest cities in the world.

MUMBAI

A CITY OF EXTREMES

Mumbai is one of India's largest cities, with a population of 19.7 million. It is also India's most important commercial center. Mumbai was part of the British Empire until independence in 1947. It was called Bombay until 1995, when it was renamed Mumbai.

Rich and poor

Mumbai is both old and modern, rich and poor. The streets are full of people doing business, selling snacks and clothes, or just living there.
Money is everywhere in modern Mumbai. India's most important businesses and banks have their headquarters there. The Bollywood film industry produces more films than Hollywood in Los Angeles.
Modern skyscrapers and new shopping malls are right next to slums. About sixty percent of the population live with no running water, no electricity, and no sanitation.

Visiting Mumbai

Mumbai is on the west coast. The wet season is from June to September. Between November and February it is a little cooler and dryer.
The city is best at sunrise and sunset, when the color of the stone buildings changes from gold to orange and pink. The cheapest and easiest transportation is by bus. Trains can be crowded and dangerous.
Because of its poverty, Mumbai can be a difficult place to live, but the experience is unique.

MULTICULTURAL MEXICO CITY

Mexico City has a population of 20.5 million. It is the largest city in both North and South America. The Aztecs called it Tenochtitlán, and it was already an important city when the Spanish invaded in 1521. The country became independent in 1821.

Indigenous and European

Mexico City offers a variety of experiences. In the Zócalo, the main square, you can see the National Palace and other historic buildings, and a modern skyscraper. The city has a lot of museums and theaters. European squares and colonial houses sit next to busy markets selling Mexican food and indigenous handicrafts. It is the richest city in Latin America. There are elegant shops selling high-end goods, expensive restaurants, and really cool cafés. There is also a lot of poverty.

Visiting Mexico City

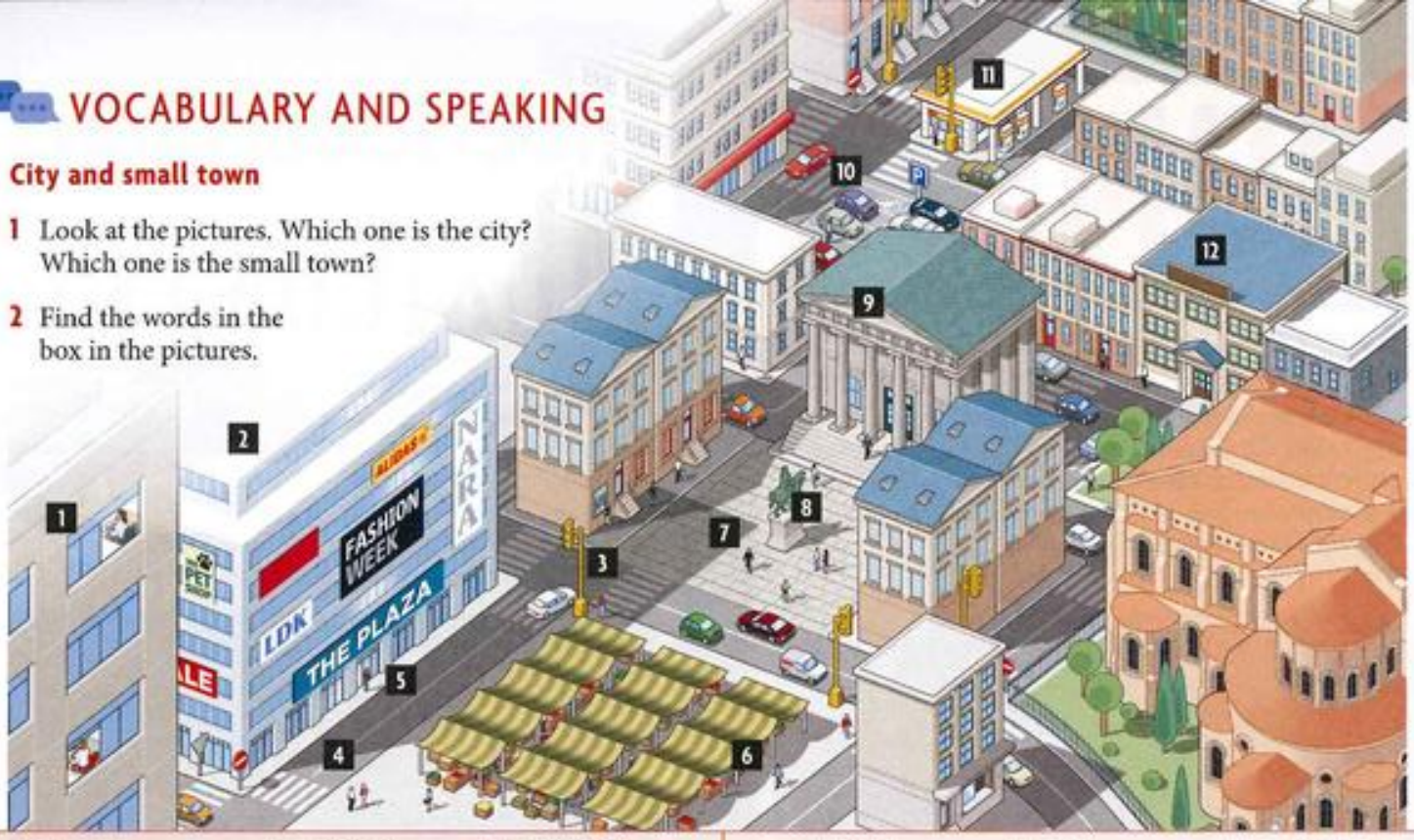
Mexico City is in a valley in the south central area of the country. It is surrounded by mountains.
The rainy season is from June to October. The warmest months are April and May. It has the largest and cheapest subway system in Latin America. Traffic moves so slowly that it is often faster to walk. The air quality is not good, and visitors need to be careful, but the city offers a rich cultural mix.

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

City and small town

1 Look at the pictures. Which one is the city? Which one is the small town?

2 Find the words in the box in the pictures.



[7] square	☐ city hall	☐ traffic light	☐ field	☐ path	☐ mountain
☐ mall	☐ street	☐ sidewalk	☐ farm	☐ river	☐ ice-cream parlor
☐ statue	☐ library	☐ office building	☐ woods	☐ cottage	☐ lake
☐ farmer's market	☐ parking lot	☐ gas station	☐ bridge	☐ hill	

3 Complete the sentences with city and town words.

1 A mall is bigger than a *farmer's market*.
2 A mountain is higher than a _____.
3 A _____ is smaller than a house.
4 A city is bigger than a _____.
5 In my city there's a _____ of George Washington sitting on his horse. It's in the main _____.
6 The mayor has an office in _____.
7 Cars drive on the _____. Pedestrians walk on the _____.

4 What can you do ...?

- at a gas station *You can buy gas.*
- in a library
- in a mall
- at a farmer's market
- in a parking lot
- on a farm

Your town

5 Where do you go in your town ...?

- to meet friends
- to see tourist sights
- for culture (art, music, history, ...)
- when it is a nice day

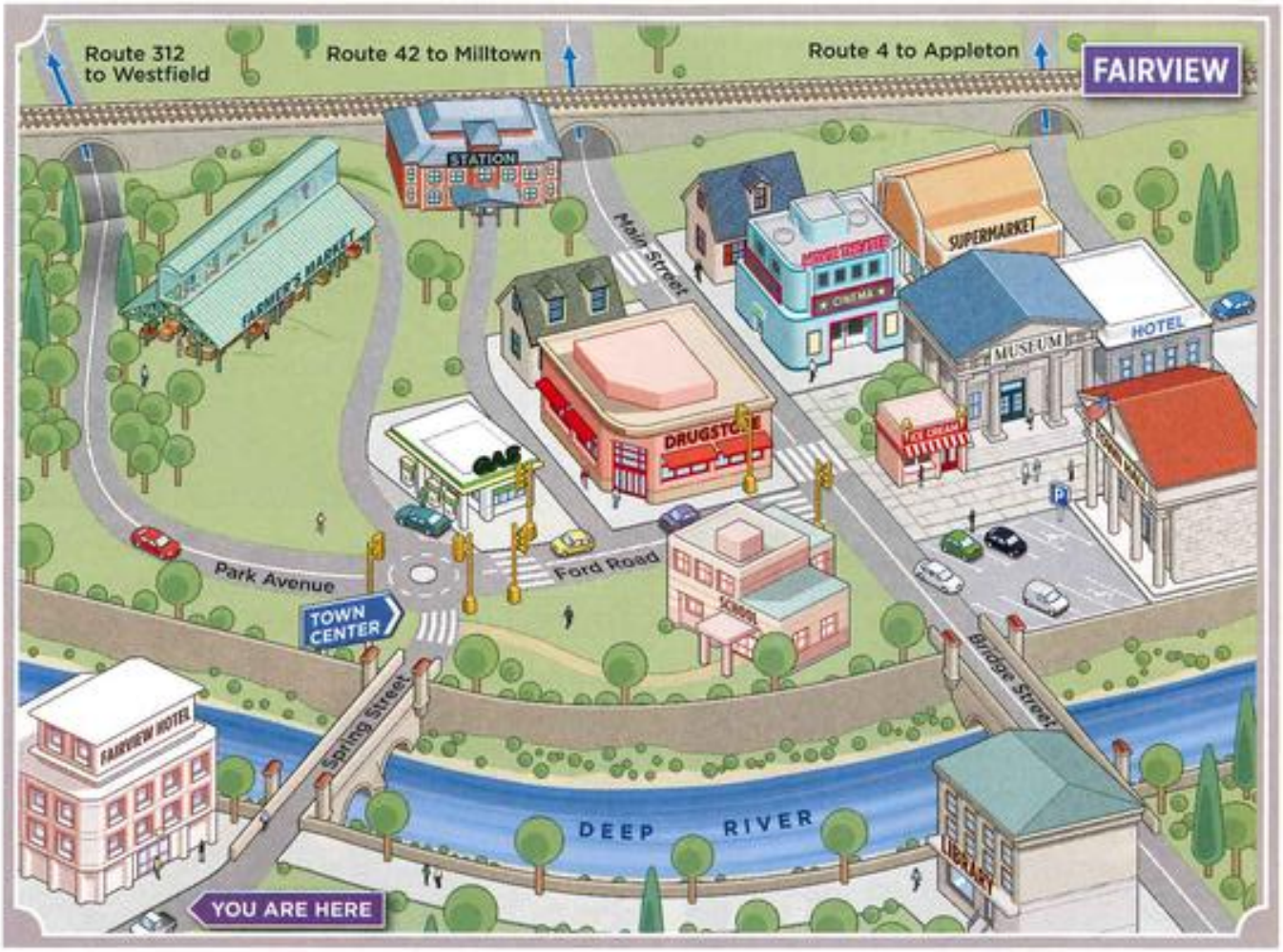
▶▶ **WRITING Describing a place** *p. 110*

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Directions

1 Look at the map of Fairview. Find these things.

a traffic circle	traffic lights	crosswalk	a traffic sign



2 CD3 12 Listen. Complete the directions from **YOU ARE HERE** to Route 312 to Westfield. Use the prepositions.

over	along	past	around	up	down	through	under

Go _along_ Spring Street, _____ the Fairview Hotel on your left, and _____ the bridge. At the traffic circle, turn left and go _____ Park Avenue. Go _____ the corner, _____ the woods, and _____ the hill. Then go _____ the railroad bridge and you are on Route 312 to Westfield.

3 CD3 13 Start from **YOU ARE HERE**. Listen to the directions. Where do you finish?

1 _____ 2 _____ 3 _____

4 Work in pairs. Ask for and give directions to …

- the train station
- Route 4 to Appleton
- a supermarket
- the Town Hall
- the library
- a drugstore
- a parking lot
- Route 42 to Milltown

Excuse me! Can you tell me how to get to … ?

Is there a … near here?

5 Give directions to places in your town from your school.

Go out of the school. Turn right and …

Oxford Online Skills Program
Log in for additional online learning

10 Where on earth are you?

Present Continuous • *something/nothing ...* • Describing people
Social expressions (2)

STARTER

Work with a partner. Which preposition *in*, *at*, or *on* goes with these places?
Some places can go with more than one preposition. **at a party** **in a meeting**

a party	a meeting	my car	work	my way home	the train	bed	vacation	a café	home
the airport	the bus stop	my office	town	the store	school	college	the kitchen	Jenny's house	the bus

I'M SITTING ON THE TRAIN

Present Continuous

1 CD3 14 Look at the pictures. Listen. Who is speaking? *I'm cooking.* 1 Kate 2 _____ 3 _____ 4 _____

2 CD3 15 Listen and complete the conversations. Practice them with a partner.

Tony Hello?
Nina Hi, Tony! It's Nina. Where are you?
Tony We're on the train. We're going to Washington, DC for the weekend.
Nina Oh, great! How's the trip going?
Tony Fine. I _____ the paper and Alice _____ something on her laptop ...

Kate Hello?
Pete Kate, hi! It's Pete. How are you? What _____ you _____?
Kate Fine. We're at home. I _____ just _____ some dinner.
Pete What _____ Tim _____?
Kate He _____ the soccer game. Can't you hear?
Pete Oh, right!

3 Ask and answer questions about the people in the pictures.
• What/doing? • Where/going? • What/cooking? • What/watching?

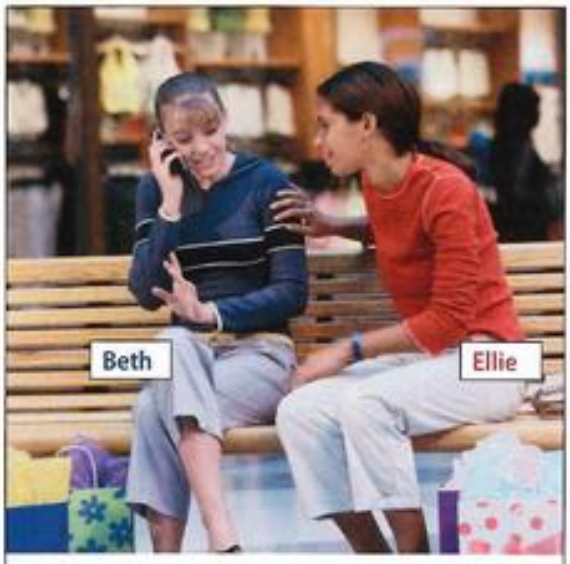
What's Tony doing? *He's reading the paper.*

CD3 16 Listen and check.

Negatives

4 Look at the picture of Beth and Ellie.

CD3 17 Listen to Beth's phone conversation with her brother. Is she telling the truth?



What *is* the truth?

They aren't sitting in Ellie's bedroom.
They ... working ... She isn't ... ... aren't ...

5 CD3 18 Listen to six false sentences about Alice, Tony, Kate, Tim, Beth, and Ellie. Correct them.

1 "Alice is sleeping."
Alice isn't sleeping! She's working on her laptop!

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 The Present Continuous (*to be* + *-ing*) describes activities happening now.

2 Complete the chart.

I	_____	learning English.
You	_____	sitting in a classroom.
He/She	_____	listening to the teacher.
We	_____	
They	_____	

What are the questions and the negatives?

3 What's the difference between these sentences?

She **speaks** Spanish. She's **speaking** Spanish.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 10.1–10.2 p. 137

PRACTICE

Questions and negatives

1 Look at the replies. Use the verbs to make the questions.

2 Make a negative sentence about each picture in exercise 1.

1 She/a detective story She isn't reading a detective story.
2 He/a movie
3 He/out with his friends
4 He/his mother
5 She/a dress
6 She/a romantic comedy

Talking about you

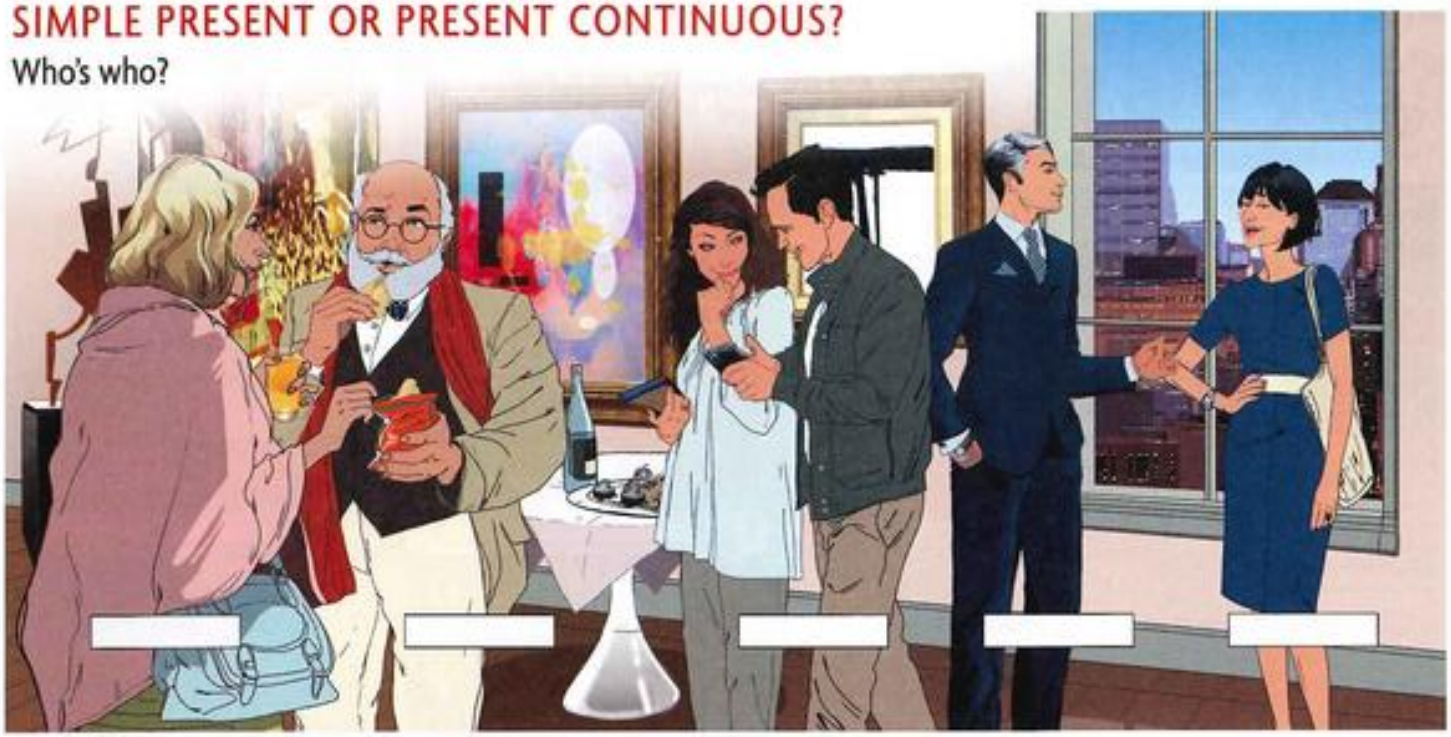
3 Write sentences that are true for you right now.

1 I/learn/English I'm learning English.
2 We/learn/Chinese
3 I/sit next to the window
4 It/rain
5 The teacher/talk to us
6 The students/listen to the teacher

4 Look out of the window of your classroom. What can you see? What's happening? Some people are walking on the street. Nothing's happening.

SIMPLE PRESENT OR PRESENT CONTINUOUS?

Who's who?



1 CD3 19 Listen to a man and a woman talking about the people in the room. Write the names in the boxes.

2 CD3 19 Listen again and complete the chart.

	What's he/she doing?	What does he/she do?
Paul	He's talking to Sophie.	He's a banker. He works in New York City.
Sophie		
Helena		
Roger		
Sam and Annie		

3 Complete the two questions about the people.

1 Where does Paul work? *In New York City.*
Who 's he talking to? *Sophie.*

2 Why _____ Sophie _____? *Because Paul is funny.*
Where _____ she _____? *At New York University.*

3 What _____ Helena _____? *Orange juice.*
What _____ she _____? *Stories for children.*

4 Who _____ Roger _____ for? *The Museum of Modern Art.*
What _____ he _____? *Chips.*

5 What _____ Sam and Annie _____? *Clothes for kids.*
What _____ they _____ at? *Photos on Sam's phone.*

4 Put the verbs in **bold** in the Simple Present or Present Continuous.

work

1 My father _____ in a bank.

2 I _____ very hard right now. I need the money.

go

3 Hi, Dave! Are you on the train? Where _____ you _____?

4 I always _____ to the movies on Fridays.

have

5 Let's have lunch tomorrow. I usually _____ lunch at 1:00.

6 I'm sorry! _____ you _____ lunch? I'll call you back later.

do/make

7 Sh! I _____ my homework. You _____ too much noise!

8 In my house, my mom usually _____ dinner, and my dad usually _____ the dishes.

SOMETHING'S HAPPENING

something/nothing . . .

1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

anything	something	nothing	everything

1 He's doing _____ on the computer.
2 He isn't wearing _____.
3 She's buying _____.
4 "What are you having for breakfast?"
"_____. I'm not hungry."

GRAMMAR SPOT

Complete the chart.

some	any	every	no
something	_____	_____	_____
somebody	anybody	_____	nobody
_____	anywhere	everywhere	_____

▶▶ Grammar Reference 10.3 p. 137

2 Choose the correct word.

1 I'm hungry. I want *something / anything* to eat.
2 I can't find my phone *nowhere / anywhere*.
3 *Anybody's / Everybody's* enjoying the party!
4 Oh, no! I don't know *anybody / somebody*.
5 The lights are off. *Nobody's / Somebody's* at home.
6 My brother is so intelligent. He knows *nothing / everything*!

PRACTICE

Everything was too expensive!

1 Complete the conversations with words from the boxes.

1 | everything | nothing | anything | something |

A Did you buy anything for yourself at the mall?
B No. _____.
A Why not?
B _____ was too expensive.
A Oh, that's too bad.
B But I bought _____ for you. Happy Birthday!

2 | nobody | anybody | somebody | everybody |

C Did you talk to _____ at the party?
D No. _____.
C Why not?
D _____ was dancing and the music was really loud!
C Oh!
D But I danced with _____ nice – a woman named Kate.

3 | somewhere | everywhere | anywhere | nowhere |

E Did you go _____ on Saturday night?
F No. _____.
E Why not?
F _____ was closed. There wasn't one place open.
E That's incredible!
F So next weekend I'm going _____ more interesting.

CD3 20 Listen and check.

2 In pairs, memorize two of the conversations. Act them out for the class.

Check it

3 Choose the correct sentence.

1 ☐ Anybody is on the phone for you.
☐ Somebody is on the phone for you.
2 ☐ I don't have anything for your birthday.
☐ I don't have nothing for your birthday.
3 ☐ I want to go somewhere hot for vacation.
☐ I want to go everywhere hot for vacation.
4 ☐ I learning English.
☐ I'm learning English.
5 ☐ She isn't working hard.
☐ She is no working hard.

READING AND LISTENING

The International Space Station

1 Look at the pictures. Talk about what you can see.

2 Read the first part of the article on this page. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false ones.

1 The ISS is flying very fast.
2 It's flying thousands of miles from Earth.
3 It goes around Earth every 90 minutes.
4 New supplies arrive once a month.
5 The Americans are competing against Russians and Europeans.
6 They are doing a lot of scientific experiments.
7 They are learning about Earth and its history.
8 They are looking for life on other planets.

3 Imagine you are talking to one of the astronauts. What questions would you like to ask him/her?

- work every day?
- wake up?
- free time?
- eat?
- sleep?
- wash?
- exercise?

4 Read the rest of the article on page 79. Did you find answers to your questions?

5 What is the future of the ISS?

6 What do these numbers from the article refer to?

100 billion	1998	six	200	15	eight	zero

Listening

7 CD3 21 Listen to the interview with Soichi Noguchi, an ISS astronaut who is on board the space station. Answer the questions.

1 Who does he work for?
2 What did he study? Where?
3 Where is he from? Is he married?
4 What are his interests on Earth?
5 What is he doing on the space station?
6 What does he do when he isn't working?
7 What does he think about?

Project

Find out who is on board the ISS right now. Choose one of the astronauts and do some research. Try to answer the questions from exercise 7.

Tell the rest of the class.

LIVING

A science laboratory 240 miles from Earth? A preparation for a flight to Mars? The International Space Station, or ISS, is both of these.

At this very moment, the ISS is orbiting Earth at a distance of 240 miles (360 kilometers). It is flying at 17,000 m/hr (28,000 km/hr). It goes around Earth 16 times a day. It took more than $100 billion and 14 years to develop. It is the most expensive thing ever built.

The station

The first part of the station went into space in 1998. Astronauts started to live on it in November 2000. There are usually three astronauts on board, and they stay for about six months at a time. Over the years there have been over 200 visitors from 15 different countries. Supply ships arrive about eight times a year.

Goals

Space agencies in the United States, Russia, Japan, Canada, and Europe are working together. They are using the zero gravity of space to do experiments in biology, physics, and astronomy. They are learning about living in space over a long time and the effects of this on the human body. The astronauts are growing plants to make oxygen. They are studying Earth's weather and geography. And they are looking at planets and stars to understand the origin of the universe.

IN SPACE

An astronaut's day

Astronauts work for ten hours a day during the week and five hours on Saturday. The rest of the time they are free.

They wake up at 6:00 and have breakfast. There is a meeting, and they make plans for the day. They have an hour for lunch, then work until dinner at 7:00. Lights out is at 9:30. They exercise for two hours every day, because weightlessness affects the body's muscles and bones.

Food

There isn't a real kitchen, but there is a kitchen table. All food comes in cans or envelopes. There is fresh fruit only when a supply ship comes.

Astronauts eat with a spoon. It is a good idea to have food with a sauce so that it stays on the spoon and doesn't float away! They like spicy food because in space the sense of taste isn't very strong.

Personal lives

They have their own sleeping compartment. They sleep in bags attached to the wall. Because there is no up or down in space, they sleep "standing up." They have their own clothes and books and laptops. The temperature is always 72°F, so astronauts usually wear shorts and a T-shirt.

There isn't a shower, but there are two toilets. In their free time they send emails home, read, and play games. But what they like to do most is look out of the windows at Earth below.

Future of the ISS

The ISS is the first of many space stations. There isn't a date yet for a manned trip to Mars, but space agencies are already talking about it. One thing is sure – at some time in the 21st century it will definitely happen.

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

Describing people

1 CD3 22 Look at the pictures. Listen to four descriptions. Who is being described?

2 Work in groups. Describe the other people in the pictures.

Who ...?
- is pretty
- is good-looking
- is handsome
- is tall
- isn't very tall

Who has ...?
- long hair
- short hair
- blond hair
- dark hair
- red hair
- brown eyes
- blue eyes

Who's wearing ...?
- a suit
- a dress
- a coat
- a hat
- shoes
- boots
- sneakers
- jeans
- a shirt and tie
- a scarf
- glasses
- shorts
- a T-shirt

3 Take turns. Choose a person in the pictures, but don't say who it is. Describe him/her to your group. Can they guess who it is?

4 Work as a class. Take turns. Choose someone in the room, but don't say who it is. Ask and answer *Yes/No* questions to find out who it is.

Is it a boy or a girl? *Is she sitting near the window?* *Is she wearing sneakers?*

The famous person game!

5 In your groups, think of someone in the news right now.

The other groups ask questions until they guess the name.

Is he an actor? *Does he work on TV?* *Is he very good-looking?*

▶▶ **WRITING Comparing and contrasting** *p. 111*

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Social expressions (2)

1 Look at the pictures and the first sentences of the conversations. What do you think are the replies?

A Patrick and I are getting married.

B Wow! That's fantastic! Congratulations!

C Can I help you?

D _____

E I'm afraid you need a new cylinder.

F _____

G We're going to the movies tonight.

H _____

I Excuse me! This machine isn't working.

J _____

K Hi. Can I speak to Dave, please?

L _____

M Thanks for the invitation to your party, but I'm afraid I can't come.

N _____

O/P Bye! Have a safe trip!

Q/R _____

2 Match these replies to the sentences in exercise 1.

> I'm sorry. Let me have a look. Oh! It isn't turned on. That's why!
>
> Oh, that's too bad. We'll miss you.
>
> Sorry, what does that mean?
>
> ~~Wow! That's fantastic! Congratulations!~~
>
> I'm afraid he isn't here right now. Can I take a message?
>
> No, I'm just looking, thanks.
>
> Thanks. We'll see you in a couple of days!
>
> Oh, nice. Well, I hope you like the movie!

CD3 23 Listen and check. What are the extra sentences in the conversations?

3 Work with a partner. Choose some conversations and practice them.

Oxford Online Skills Program
Log in for additional online learning

11 Going far

going to future • Infinitive of purpose • What's the weather like?
Making suggestions

STARTER

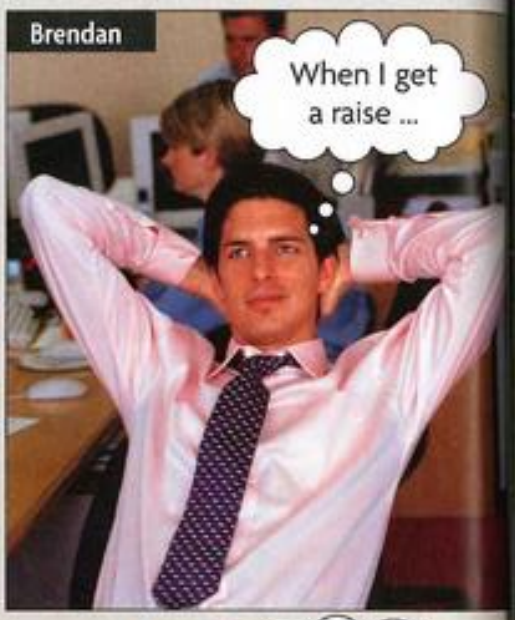
How many sentences can you make?

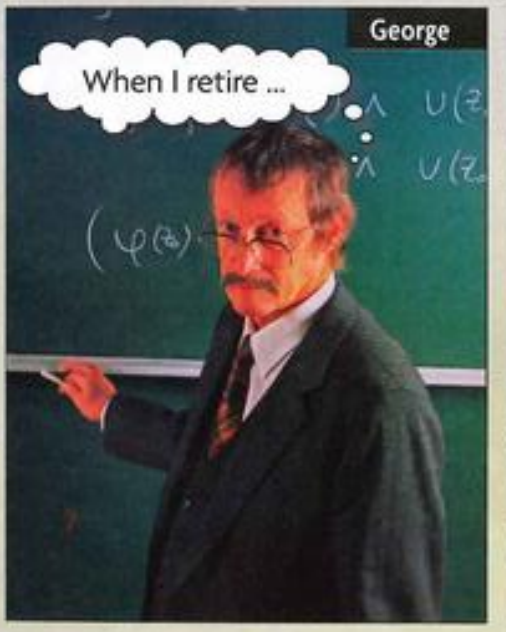
	soon.
	when I was a student.
I'm going to India	next month.
I went to India	a year from now.
	two years ago.
	when I retire.

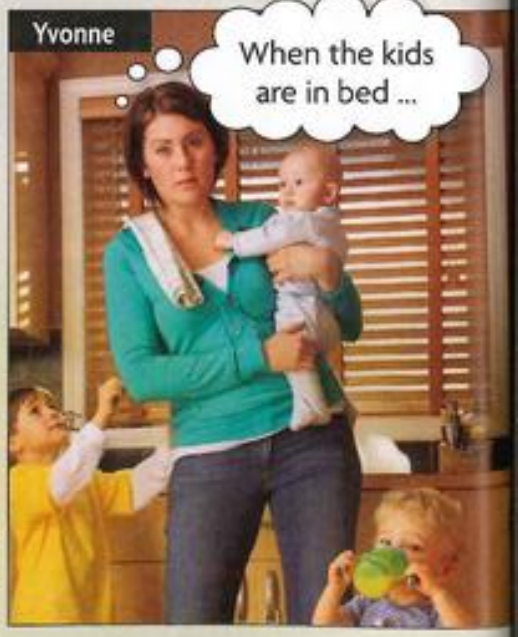
PLANNING MY FUTURE

going to

1 Look at the pictures. What are the people doing? What are they thinking about?







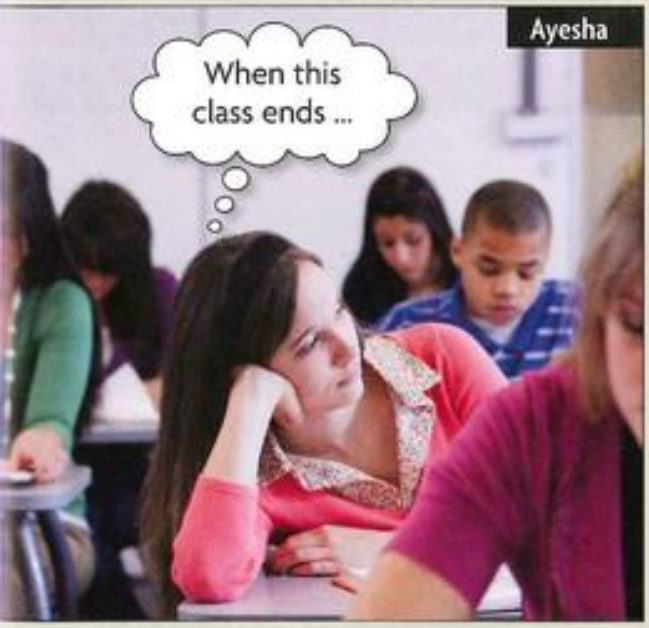
2 Whose future plans are these? Match them with the people in exercise 1.

1 Alex "I'm going to relax with my wife."
2 _____ "I'm going to be a race-car driver."
3 _____ "I'm going to sit down and have a cup of tea."

Complete these plans. Whose are they?

4 _____ "... buy my girlfriend a ring."
5 _____ "... lie on the beach."
6 _____ "... learn to play golf."
7 _____ "... meet my friends in the park."

CD3 24 Listen and check.



3 CD3 25 Listen and repeat. Then ask and answer questions about *all* the people with a partner.

What's Alex going to do? — He's going to relax.

What's Jason going to do? — He's going to be a race-car driver.

4 CD3 26 What *aren't* the people going to do? Listen, then talk to a partner about them.

Alex isn't going to talk about work. He's going to relax.

Talking about you

5 Work in small groups. What are you going to do after this class? Ask and answer questions.

- watch TV
- have a coffee
- see your friends
- cook a meal
- do some shopping
- wash your hair
- do your homework
- play video games

Are you going to watch TV? — Yes, I am. / No, I'm not.

6 Tell the class some of the things you and your partner *are* or *aren't* going to do.

We're both going to have coffee.

I'm going to cook, but Anna isn't. She's going to have a pizza.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 The verb *to be + going to* expresses future plans. Complete the chart.

I	_____	going to cook tonight.
He/She	_____	
You/We/They	_____	

2 Make the question and negative.
What **am I going to cook** tonight?

3 Is there any difference in meaning between these sentences?
I'm leaving tomorrow. **I'm going to leave** tomorrow.

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 11.1–11.2 p. 138**

PRACTICE

Careful! You're going to drop it!

We also use *going to* when we can see now something that is sure to happen in the future.

1 Look at the pictures. Write what is going to happen. Use the verbs in the box.

drop
rain
sneeze
win
be late
fall

CD3 27 Listen and check.

2 Work with a partner. Can you remember the sentences? CD3 27 Listen again. Practice them.

Check it

3 Choose the correct sentence.

1 ☐ He's go to watch the soccer game.
☐ He's going to watch the soccer game.

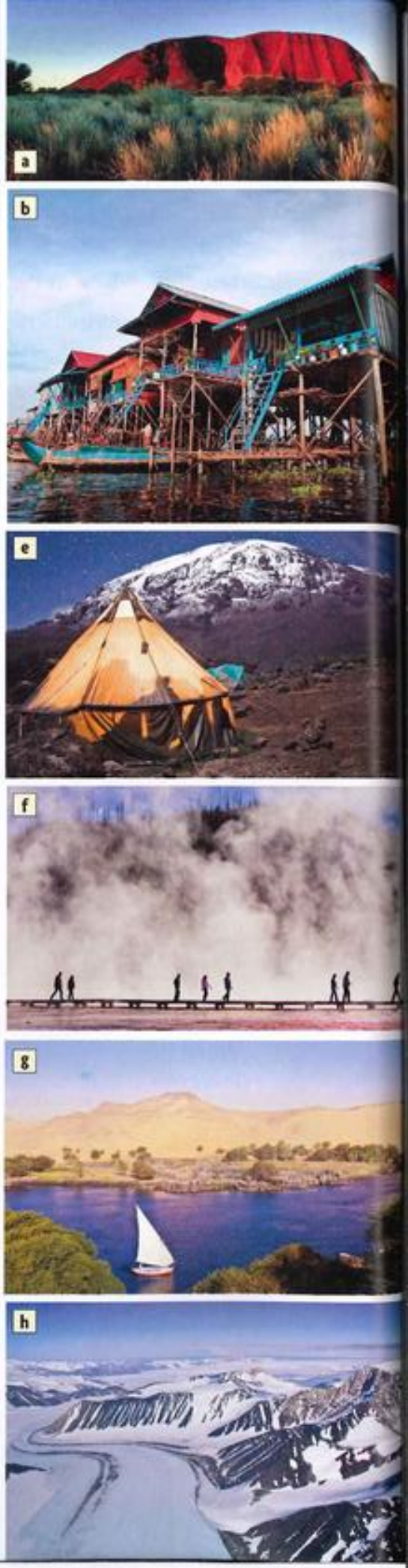
2 ☐ We going to the movies tonight.
☐ We're going to the movies tonight.

3 ☐ She isn't going to cook.
☐ She no going to cook.

4 ☐ Is going to rain?
☐ Is it going to rain?

5 ☐ When are they going to get married?
☐ When they going to get married?

6 ☐ I'm going the library.
☐ I'm going to the library.



WE'RE OFF TO SEE THE WORLD!

Infinitive of purpose

1 Match the places and activities. Find them in the photos.

Australia	take a cruise down the Nile River
The US	climb Mount Kilimanjaro
Peru	fly over the coldest place on Earth
Antarctica	take photos of Ayers Rock at sunset
Egypt	visit Machu Picchu
Cambodia	go on a tiger safari
Tanzania	see the supervolcano at Yellowstone Park
India	visit the floating villages in Lake Tonlé Sap

2 Rob and Becky are planning a world trip. Complete their conversation with a friend with activities from exercise 1.

Rob First, we're going to Egypt.
Friend Why? To see the pyramids?
Becky Well, yes, but also we want to _____.
Friend Great! Where are you going after that?
Rob Well, then we're going to Tanzania to _____.

CD3 28 Listen and check. Practice the conversation with a partner.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 With the verbs *to go* and *to come*, we usually use the Present Continuous for future plans.

We're going to Egypt soon. **We're coming** home in June.
NOT ~~We're going to go ...~~ ~~We're going to come~~ ...

2 Do these sentences have the same meaning?

We're going to Egypt **to see** the pyramids.
We're going to Egypt **because we want to see** the pyramids.

The infinitive can answer the question *Why ...?*

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 11.2–11.3 p. 138**

PRACTICE

Listening and speaking

1 CD3 29 Listen to Rob and Becky's whole conversation. Write down the order of places on their trip.

Egypt, Tanzania, ...

2 Talk about their trip. Use *first, then, next, after that.*

First, they're going to Egypt to see the pyramids and to take a cruise down the Nile River.

Then, they're ...

When ...? Why ...?

3 Write down the names of some places you went to in the past. Ask and answer questions about the places with a partner.

When did you go to Australia? — Two years ago.
Why did you go? — To learn English.

Tell the class about your partner.

▶▶ **WRITING** CD3 30 **Describing a vacation** *p. 112*

READING AND SPEAKING

Meet Zoë Romano

1 Look at the photos of the young woman.

- Where is she?
- What is she doing?

2 Read the first part of the text (on this page). Correct these false statements.

1 Zoë always runs without shoes.
2 Zoë ran from Canada to Mexico.
3 She ran a marathon when she was 19.
4 Zoë always runs alone.
5 Zoë cycled across the US.

3 Read the rest of the text (on page 87). Ask and answer these questions with a partner.

1 What did Zoë want to do after her first big adventure?
2 Where did Zoë go in 2013?
3 What did she do there?
4 Why does Zoë run long distances?
5 Who does Zoë help?
6 What does the this organization do?
7 How much money did Zoë raise?
8 What is Zoë doing now?
9 What is Zoë teaching people?
10 What is Zoë going to do next?

What do you think?

- Why do you think Zoë loves long-distance adventures?
- What kind of adventures do you like?
- What are your "big dreams?" Do you think you're going to do the things you dream about?

Role play

4 Work with a partner.

What ... your name?
Why ... ?
How old ... ?

Student A
You are a newspaper journalist.
Interview Zoë.
Use questions from exercise 3 to help.

Student B
You are Zoë.
Answer the journalist's questions.

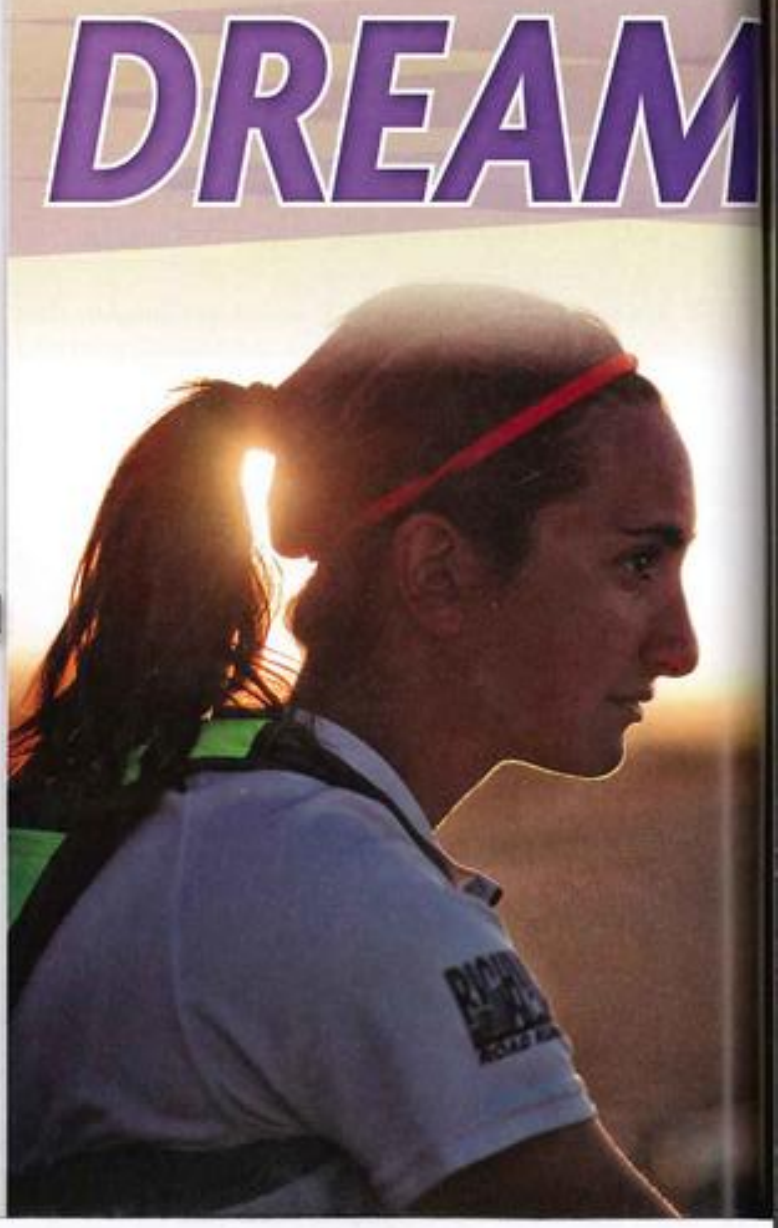
Project

Research another person who raises money for an organization. What organization is it? How does the person raise money? Tell the class.

She wakes up early, puts on her running shoes, and runs all day. Yes, *all day*. She runs in hot weather and through rain storms. She runs up and down mountains. For Zoë Romano, this is a typical day.

Zoë's adventures

Zoë Romano is a long-distance runner. In 2006, when she was 19, Zoë ran her first half marathon (13.1 miles). Five years later, she ran a marathon (26.2 miles) almost every day for four months! She ran across the US, from coast to coast – a distance of 2,800 miles. Along the way, many people helped Zoë. Some people ran with her for a few miles. Other people gave her food. Some people even invited her to stay in their homes.



IT, THEN *DO* IT

Soon after that amazing challenge, Zoë was ready for another adventure. She wanted to do something even more difficult than her cross-America run. So in the summer of 2013, Zoë went to France. She ran the same course that the world's top cyclists ride in the Tour de France. For cyclists, the Tour de France is the highest level of competition. For a runner, it's almost impossible. But Zoë did it, and she was the first person to run the 2,115 mile course. She finished in 64 days. So she ran about 30 miles each day, and she only rested for a few days in between. In the last 23 hours, she ran 90 miles without a break. Not one break!

Why does she do it?

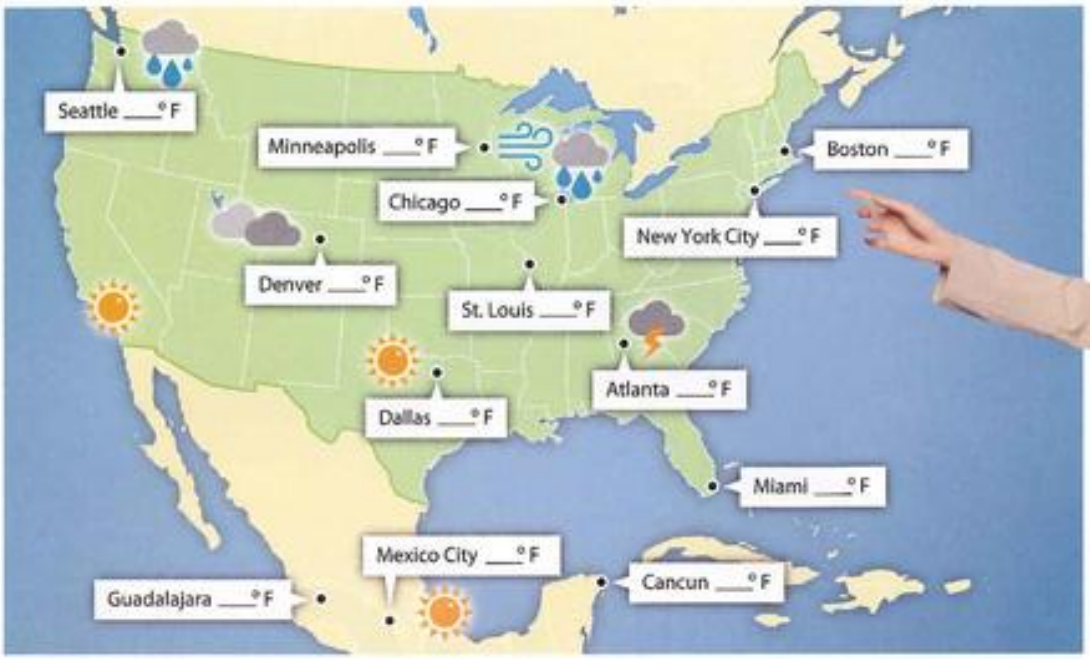
Zoë runs long distances because she loves adventure. She also runs to raise money for an organization called World Pediatric Project. This organization helps to take care of sick children around the world. Zoë's fans donated almost $200,000 to help these children.

These days, Zoë writes magazine articles. She is also writing a book about her adventures. She's traveling around and speaking to groups of people. Zoë is teaching people that they too can dream big and do great things. She likes to say, "Dream it, then do it." Zoë is already dreaming about her next adventure. She isn't sure what she's going to do, but she's sure that it's going to be exciting!

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

What's the weather like?

1 Look at the weather map of the United States and Mexico. Where is it sunny? Where is it raining?



CD3 31 Listen to a weather forecast. Write the temperatures on the map. Which season is it?

2 Match the weather adjectives with their symbols on the map. Which two adjectives are not in the forecast?

sunny	rainy	windy	snowy	cloudy	foggy	stormy

3 Look at these adjectives. Which words in exercise 2 can they go with? Make some sentences.

hot	warm	cold	cool	wet	dry

It's hot and sunny. *It's cool and rainy.*

CD3 32 Listen and repeat the question.

What's the weather **like**?

What ... like? asks for a description.
What's the weather like? means *Describe the weather.*

4 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about the weather. Use sentences from exercise 3 in your answers.

5 **CD3 33** Listen and complete the conversation. Practice it with your partner.

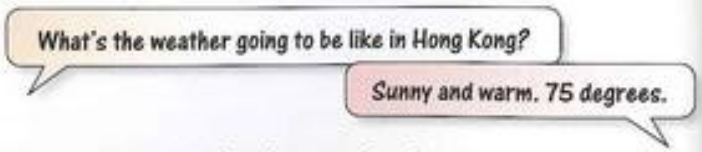
A What's the weather like today?
B It's _____ and _____.
A What was it like yesterday?
B Oh, it was _____ and _____.
A And what's it going to be like tomorrow?
B I think it's going to be _____ and _____.

Ask and answer questions about the weather where you are for today, yesterday, and tomorrow.

6 Work with a new partner to find out about world weather tomorrow.

Student A Look at p. 147.
Student B Look at p. 150.

Ask and answer questions to complete the information.



7 Write a short weather forecast for the coming weekend. Read it to your partner.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Making suggestions

1 Make a list of things you can do in good weather and things you can do in bad weather. Compare your list with a partner and the class.

Good weather	Bad weather
play tennis	watch a movie

2 CD3 34 Listen and complete the conversations.

1 **A** What a beautiful day!

B Yeah! It's really _____ and _____.
What should we do?

A Let's _____!

2 **A** What an awful day! It's raining again.

B I know. It's so _____ and _____!
What should we do?

A Let's _____ and _____.

1 We use *should* with *I* and *we* to ask for and make suggestions.

What **should we** do?
Should we go swimming? = I suggest that we go swimming.

2 We use *Let's* to make a suggestion for everyone.

Let's go! = I suggest that we all go. (Let's = Let us)
Let's have a pizza!

3 Continue the two conversations in exercise 2 with these sentences in the correct order.

Oh no, that's boring! We did that last night.

Oh no! It's too hot to walk.

OK, let's go to the beach.

OK then, should we go out for a coffee?

Great! I'll get my coat and an umbrella!

Good idea! Why don't we take a picnic?

CD3 35 Listen and check. Practice the conversations with your partner.

4 Have more conversations suggesting what to do when the weather is good or bad. Use your lists of activities in exercise 1.

Oxford Online Skills Program
Log in for additional online learning

12 Never ever!

Present Perfect • *ever, never, yet,* and *just* • *take* and *get*
Transportation and travel

STARTER

1 Match the countries and flags. What are their capital cities?

Argentina	Italy
Australia	Japan
Brazil	Korea
Chile	Mexico
China	Switzerland
Egypt	the US

2 Select the countries that you have visited.

BEEN THERE! DONE THAT!

Present Perfect + *ever* and *never*

1 CD3 36 Lara and her friend, Kyle, are from Australia. Listen to their conversation. Answer the questions.

- What are they talking about?
- Who is Mel?
- Why does Lara want to end the conversation?

2 Read these sentences from the conversation. Who is each sentence about: Lara, Kyle, or Mel?

1 I've been to Hong Kong many times. Kyle
2 I've never been there.
3 She's been to Tokyo and Taipei.
4 She hasn't been to Hong Kong.
5 I haven't traveled much at all.
6 I've been to Asia, North and South America.

CD3 37 Listen and repeat.

I've = I have	She's = She has

3 Work in groups. Tell each other which countries in the Starter you *have* or *haven't* been to.

> I've been to Mexico, but I've never been to Australia or the US.

> I haven't been to any of those countries!

4 CD3 38 Listen to the conversation. Complete the replies.

A Have you ever been to Chile?
B No, I _____ .
A Have you ever been to Brazil?
B Yes, I _____ .
A When did you go?
B Two years _____ .
A Where did you go?
B Rio, Salvador, and Recife.
A Wow! Did you have a good time?
B Yes, I _____ . It was great!

Practice the conversation with a partner.

5 Write down the names of two countries or cities. Have similar conversations with your partner.
Start: *Have you ever ...?*

6 Tell the class about your partner.

> Maria's been to Puebla. She went there two years ago.

> Miguel hasn't been to Acapulco./ He's never been to Acapulco.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 The Present Perfect can express experiences.

I've been to Mexico City.
Have you **ever** (*at any time in your life*) **been** to Mexico City?

2 The Simple Past expresses exactly when something happened.

I **went** to Mexico City **last year**.
"When **did** you **go** to Sydney?" "In 2014."

3 The Present Perfect is formed with *have/has* + past participle. Complete the charts.

Affirmative

I/You/We/They	_____	been to Mexico City.
He/She	_____	

Negative

I/You/We/They	_____	been to Mexico City.
He/She	_____	

4 Write *ever* and *never* in these sentences.

Has he _____ been to Rio de Janeiro?
He's _____ been to Seoul.

▶▶ **Grammar Reference 12.1–12.3 p. 138**

7 Here are the past participles of some verbs. Write the base form. Which two are regular verbs?

been	_____	run	_____
lived	_____	bought	_____
flown	_____	given	_____
met	_____	made	_____
eaten	_____	had	_____
failed	_____	taken	_____
seen	_____	done	_____
slept	_____	gotten	_____

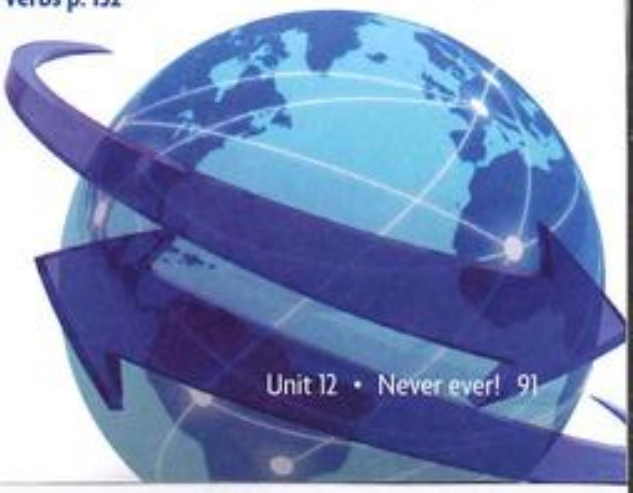
8 What are the Simple Past forms of the verbs in exercise 7?

9 Work with a partner. Take turns testing each other.

> see

> saw, seen

▶▶ **Irregular Verbs p. 152**



PRACTICE

Talking about you

1 Have you ever done these things in your life?

- flown in an airplane
- worked all night
- lived in a foreign country
- seen the sunrise
- slept in a tent
- met a famous person
- run a marathon
- eaten Chinese food
- failed a test

2 Work in small groups. Ask and answer questions.

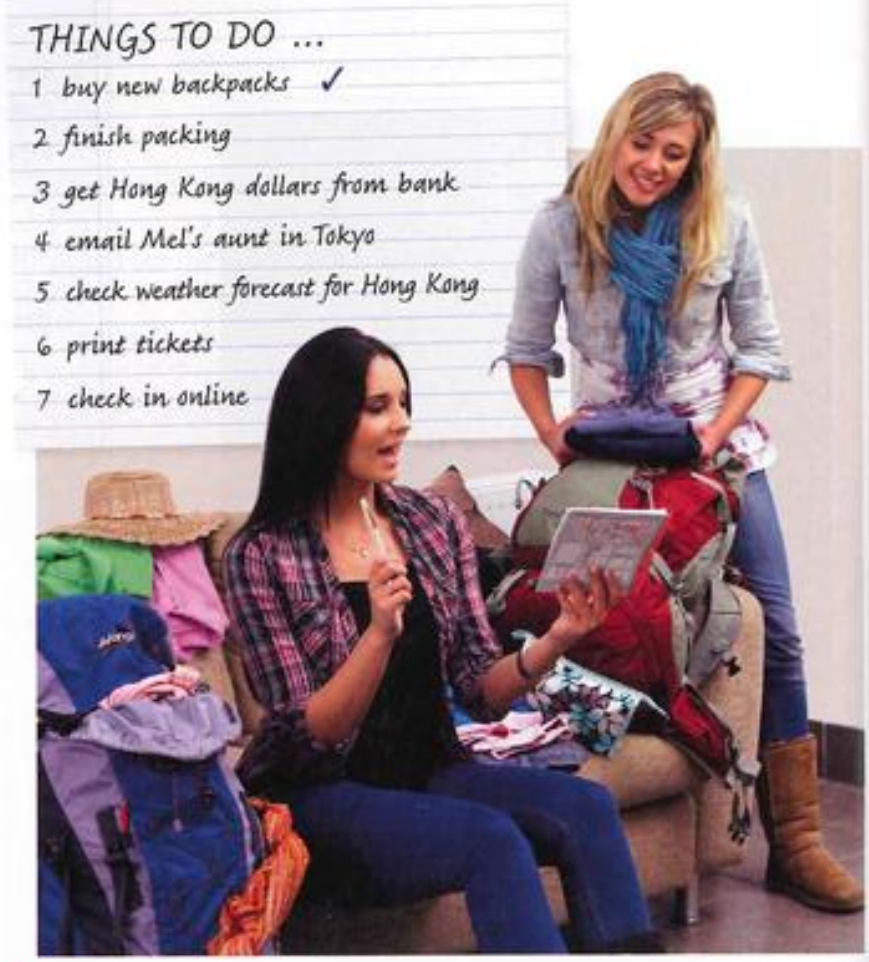
3 Tell the class about the people in your group.

José has been to the US. He went to Disneyland with his family.

GETTING READY TO GO!

yet and *just*

1 CD3 39 Lara and Mel are getting ready for their trip to Hong Kong. Read their "Things to do" list and listen to their conversation. Choose the things they have done.



2 Look at Lara and Mel's list with a partner. What have they done and what haven't they done yet?

They've bought new backpacks.
They haven't finished packing yet.

CD3 39 Listen again and check. Practice the conversation.

GRAMMAR SPOT

1 Complete the sentences.

1 They _____ finished packing **yet**.

2 _____ you emailed your aunt **yet**?

2 Where do we put *yet* in a sentence?

3 We can only use *yet* with two of the following. Which two?

☐ affirmative sentences ☐ questions ☐ negative sentences

▶▶ Grammar Reference 12.3 p. 138

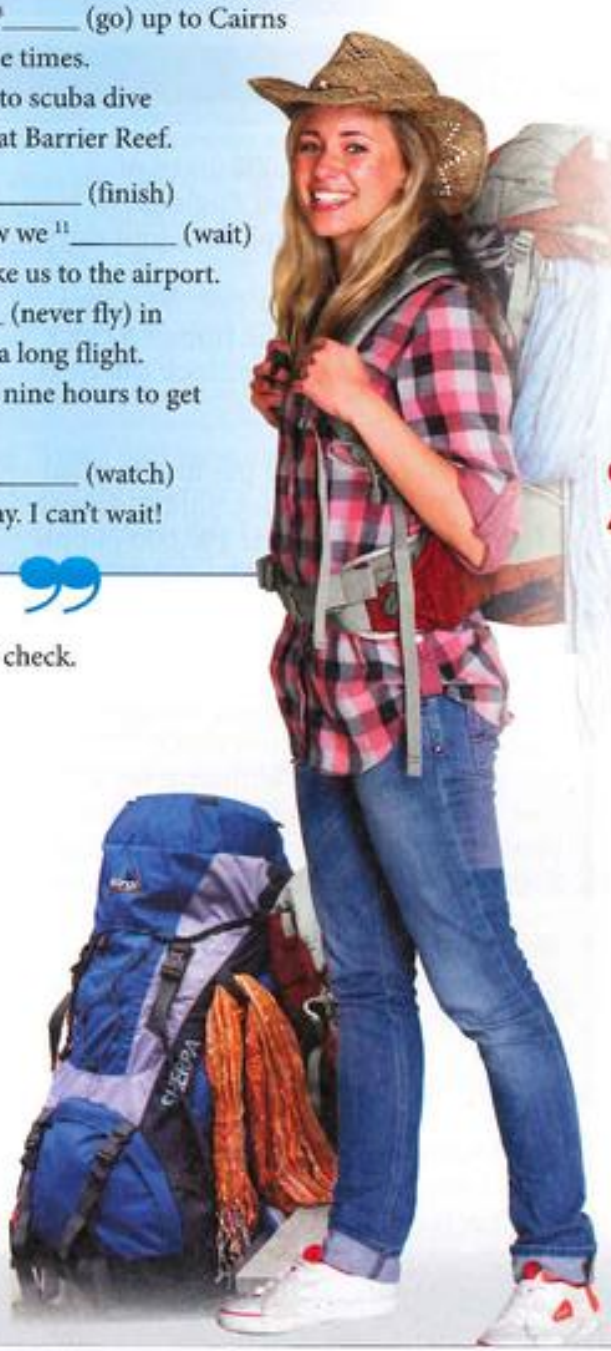
PRACTICE

Tense review

1 Work with a partner. Read what Lara says about her trip. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct tense.

I'm really excited about my trip to Hong Kong. I [1]_____ (not travel) much outside Australia before. Just once, two years ago, I [2]_____ (go) on vacation to New Zealand with my family, but I [3]_____ (never be) to Asia or the US. I often [4]_____ (travel) inside Australia. Last year I [5]_____ (fly) to Perth to visit my cousin, who [6]_____ (live) there. It's a five-hour flight from Sydney, where I [7]_____ (live). Australia's a big country! Also, I [8]_____ (go) up to Cairns in the north three times. I [9]_____ (learn) to scuba dive there on the Great Barrier Reef.

We just [10]_____ (finish) packing, and now we [11]_____ (wait) for the taxi to take us to the airport. I [12]_____ (never fly) in a 747 before. It's a long flight. It [13]_____ (take) nine hours to get to Hong Kong. I [14]_____ (watch) movies all the way. I can't wait!



CD3 40 Listen and check.

2 Answer the questions about Lara. Then ask and answer with a partner.

1 Why is she excited?
2 Has she ever traveled outside Australia?
3 Does she often travel?
4 Why did she go to Perth?
5 Where does Lara live?
6 How many times has she been to Cairns?
7 What did she do there?
8 How are they going to the airport?
9 How long does the flight to Hong Kong take?
10 What is she going to do on the flight?

No, not yet!

3 Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions about you.

1 check your emails
2 do the shopping
3 wash your hair
4 clean the car
5 make dinner
6 do the dishes
7 meet the new student
8 finish this exercise

Have you checked your emails yet?
Yes, I just checked them.
No, I haven't. / No, not yet.

CD3 41 Listen and compare. Practice again.

Check it

4 Choose the correct sentence.

1 ☐ I saw Kyle yesterday.
☐ I've seen Kyle yesterday.

2 ☐ Did you ever met my cousin?
☐ Have you ever met my cousin?

3 ☐ When did she go to New Zealand?
☐ When has she been to New Zealand?

4 ☐ What are you going to do in Hong Kong?
☐ What do you going to do in Hong Kong?

5 ☐ He doesn't like flying.
☐ He isn't liking flying.

6 ☐ Has Lara yet finished packing?
☐ Has Lara finished packing yet?

7 ☐ Did you ever been to a rock concert?
☐ Have you ever been to a rock concert?

READING AND LISTENING

The Glastonbury festival

1 Have you ever been to a music festival? Where? When? Did you enjoy it?

Have you heard of the Glastonbury Music Festival?

2 CD3 42 Listen to part of a song called *They Can't Buy The Sunshine*. It was sung at Glastonbury by a group called Turin Brakes.

3 Read the facts about Glastonbury. Answer the questions.

1 Where and when does Glastonbury take place?
2 How many hours of music are there every day?
3 What are some differences between Glastonbury in 1970 and today?
4 Who do you know from the list of performers? Who do you like?
5 What happened in 2009?
6 What happened in 2005? Why is the song *They can't buy the sunshine* a good song for the festival?

I've been to

The world's biggest

Some facts

The festival covers 1,000 acres of farmland in southwest England. It takes place in June and lasts four days.

About 700 acts play on over 80 stages. There is nonstop music from 9 o'clock in the morning until 6 o'clock the next morning.

1,500 people attended the first festival in September 1970. They paid £1 (about $1.70) a ticket. Last year 190,000 people attended. They paid £205 (about $340) for a ticket.

Hundreds of famous names have performed at Glastonbury: singers such as Paul McCartney, Bruce Springsteen, Robbie Williams, Jay Z, Amy Winehouse, and Beyoncé, and bands such as REM, Radiohead, Coldplay, Arctic Monkeys, and The Rolling Stones.

In 2009, news of Michael Jackson's death hit in the middle of the festival. Immediately T-shirts with the slogan "I was at Glastonbury when Michael Jackson died" were on sale.

The festival is famous for its rain! In 1997, 1998, and 2005 it rained every day, and the festival-goers danced in the mud.

Glastonbury!

open-air music festival

Some experiences

Marina M, Manchester "My first Glastonbury was 2005. The year of rain and MUD! We took off our shoes and danced in it up to our knees! I loved it! I've now been six times! It's always a lot of fun, even though you don't sleep much! This year's festival was fantastic – I didn't want to go home. A definite highlight for me was an Icelandic band called Sigur Ros. I'd never heard of them, but I loved their music. And there were a lot more toilets this year! Much better!"

Dave Chow, Hong Kong "Well, I don't know what to say – this was my first time, and it was the most amazing experience! I'm now sitting at work thinking about the best four days of my life. We didn't see any bad bands, and the DJs rocked all night. We saw the sun rise at 5:15 on Sunday morning – an amazing experience. Only one complaint – there were so many cell phones. Why? I thought Glasto was about getting away from it all."

Len Ferris, London "I've taken my kids to Glastonbury twice. It really is an education for kids. The atmosphere is amazing. I think this is because of the mix of people of all ages. It's great to see them – from babies, toddlers, and teenagers, to people my parents' age and older. Everyone gets along so well. On Saturday night we watched Radiohead with my 11-year-old son, and the crowd moved back so he could see better. We loved everything."

Izzi, Christchurch, New Zealand "This was my first year at Glastonbury. I traveled 10,000 miles to be there. I've been to other festivals in Australia and Europe. I went to the Sonar Festival in Barcelona two years ago – it was great, but I've always wanted to come to Glastonbury. It was amazing. Radiohead was the best thing I've ever seen at a festival, and I'm going to come next year if I can. Long live Glastonbury!!"

4 Read four people's experiences of Glastonbury very quickly. Answer the questions.

1 Who has been there often?
2 Who has been only once?
3 Which people loved it all?
4 Who had one complaint. What about?
5 Who took his child?
6 Who traveled a long way to get there?

5 Read the experiences again. Are these sentences true (T) or false (F)? Correct the false ones.

1 **Marina** slept in her tent when it rained.
2 She thought the Icelandic band was very good and the toilets were cleaner.
3 **Dave** stayed up all night listening to the music.
4 He had no complaints. He loved everything and everybody.
5 **Len** loves the festival because it brings people of all ages together.
6 His son couldn't see the stage because of the crowds.
7 **Izzi** has never been to a music festival before.
8 She traveled from Barcelona to be there.

Listening

6 CD3 43 Listen to two more people, Elsa and Daniel. What do they say about …?

- the food
- the weather
- the music
- the people

Who had the best experience?

What do you think?

- Why do you think so many people love the Glastonbury experience?
- Why do bands like playing there?
- Would you like to go to Glastonbury? Why/Why not?

VOCABULARY AND SPEAKING

take and *get*

1 The verbs *take* and *get* have a lot of uses in English. Look at these sentences from the experiences at Glastonbury.

> *It takes place in June.* *Everyone gets along so well.*
> *We took off our shoes.* *I got really bored.*
> *It took a long time to get to the stages.*

2 Complete the conversations with an expression from exercise 1 in the correct tense.

A It's really hot in here.

B Why don't you _____ _____ your sweater?

A Is your office near where you live?

B No, it _____ _____ _____ time to _____ _____ work.

A What are your co-workers like?

B Great! We all _____ _____ really _____.

A How often are there exhibitions in the museum?

B They _____ _____ regularly, every two months.

A Do you like learning English?

B It's OK, but sometimes I _____ really _____!

CD3 44 Listen and check. Practice with a partner.

3 Here are some more expressions. Which go with *take* and which with *get*? Complete the chart.

~~a test~~	married	it easy	better soon
home late	photos	ready	a break
on/off the bus	a long time	a lot of emails	very wet

take	get
a test	

4 Complete the sentences with *take* or *get* in the correct form.

1 I usually _____ a coffee break at around 10:00 in the morning.
2 How long _____ it _____ if you go by train?
3 Could you please _____ a picture of us?
4 Sue _____ her driving test three times and she's failed every time.
5 Are you still _____ ready? We're going to be so late!
6 The doctor told me to _____ it easy if I want to _____ better soon.
7 It rained on the day we _____ married. We _____ very wet, but still had a great day.
8 You can't _____ on the bus with that big dog. Please, _____ off!

CD3 45 Read the sentences aloud. Then listen and check.

Talking about you

5 Work with a partner. Complete the questions then ask and answer them about you.

1 How long does it _____ you to _____ to school?
2 What time do you _____ back home after school/work?
3 What time do you usually _____ up in the morning?
4 Have you _____ any exams this year?
5 Does it _____ you a long time to _____ ready before you go out?
6 Are you _____ tired of this exercise?

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Transportation and travel

1 Write the words in the chart. Some words can go in more than one column.

airport, round-trip ticket, arrivals, boarding pass, train station, ticket office, customs, security check, bus stop, platform, carry-on bags, flight, departures

bus	train	plane

2 CD3 46 Listen to three travel announcements. Are they for a bus, train, or plane?

3 CD3 46 Listen again. Write down all the numbers you hear. What do they refer to? Which places can you remember?

4 Read these sentences. Are they for a bus, train, or plane?

1 The number 360 stops near the museum.
2 The track number just went up on the departures board.
3 Does the number 24 go to the Natural History Museum?
4 How many carry-on bags do you have?
5 You board from Gate 9 at 10:20.
6 You'll want a same-day round trip.

5 Work with a partner. Put the sentences in **A** and **B** in the correct order to make two conversations.

Conversation 1

A	B
☐ At 9:55. The track number just went up on the departures board.	☐ Oh, yes. I see it. Thank you very much.
☐ 1 Next, please!	☐ A round trip to Washington, DC, please.
☐ Have a good trip!	☐ Thank you. What time does the next train leave?
☐ That's $85.	

Conversation 2

A	B
☐ Oh, thanks for your help.	☐ At that bus stop over there.
☐ Where can I get it?	☐ No problem.
☐ Excuse me, does the number 24 go to the Natural History Museum?	☐ No, it doesn't. You need the 360.

CD3 47 Listen and check. Practice the conversations with your partner.

6 CD3 48 Listen and complete this conversation. Where are Lara and Mel?

A Have you _____ _____ online?
M Yes, we have.
A Fine. How many _____ do you have?
L We don't have _____, just _____.
A Oh, OK. Can you put them on the scales?
M Here you are …
A They're fine. And how many _____ _____?
L Just these _____.
A They're fine, too. You _____ from Gate 9 at 10:20.
L Where do we go now?
A To the departure gate and _____. They're over there. Have a nice _____.
M Thanks very much. Goodbye.

7 Practice the transportation and travel conversations with your partner. Act some of them out for the class.

▶▶ WRITING CD3 49 A poem p. 113

Oxford Online Skills Program
Log in for additional online learning

Writing and Reference Materials

- **WRITING SECTION** p. 99
- **AUDIO SCRIPTS** p. 114
- **GRAMMAR REFERENCE** p. 130
- **WORD LIST** p. 139
- **PAIRWORK ACTIVITIES STUDENT A** p. 145
- **PAIRWORK ACTIVITIES STUDENT B** p. 148
- **EXTRA MATERIALS** p. 151
- **IRREGULAR VERBS / VERB PATTERNS** p. 152
- **PHONETIC SYMBOLS** p. 153

Writing Contents

UNIT 1	**A BLOG** p. 100	Keeping an online journal
UNIT 2	**IMPROVING STYLE** p. 101	Using pronouns
UNIT 3	**FILLING OUT FORMS** p. 102	An application form
UNIT 4	**DESCRIBING YOUR HOME** p. 103	Linking words *and, so, but, because*
UNIT 5	**A FORMAL EMAIL** p. 104	Applying for a job
UNIT 6	**A BIOGRAPHY** p. 105	Combining sentences
UNIT 7	**TELLING A STORY** p. 106	Using time expressions
UNIT 8	**TWO EMAILS** p. 108	Informal and more formal
UNIT 9	**DESCRIBING A PLACE** p. 110	Relative pronouns *that, who, where*
UNIT 10	**COMPARING AND CONTRASTING** p. 111	Linking words *but, however, although*
UNIT 11	**DESCRIBING A VACATION** p. 112	Writing a postcard
UNIT 12	**A POEM** p. 113	Choosing the right word

1 What is a blog? Are you a blogger?

2 Complete the blog about you.

My English Blog

Blog posts | Images | Links

Day 1 **Welcome to my blog!** POSTED ON _____ BY _____.

Hello! My name's _____. I'm from _____ and I'm _____ years old. I'm a student. I go to _____.
I want to learn English because _____
_____.

Day 2 **Meet my family!** POSTED ON _____ BY _____.

I want to tell you about my family. It is/isn't very _____.
My _____'s name is _____. He's/She's _____.
My _____'s name is _____. He's/She's _____.
I have _____
_____.
We live in _____ near _____.

Day 3 **Come to my school!** POSTED ON _____ BY _____.

My school is in _____. It's very _____
and it's near _____. My teacher's name is _____.
The students' names are _____.
They are from _____.
After class, I _____
_____.

3 Talk about your blog to a partner.

4 Choose a topic and think of a title. Write your blog entry for Day 4. Read it aloud to the class.

Day 4 _____ POSTED ON _____ BY _____.

Hello again! _____
_____
_____
_____
_____.

◀◀ p. 13

1 Complete the charts.

Subject pronouns	Object pronouns	Possessive adjectives
I	me	my
_____	you	_____
he	him	his
_____	her	_____
it	it	its
we	us	_____
_____	them	their

2 Circle the possessive adjectives and underline the pronouns in the sentences.

1 Her son is in my class. I like him.
2 Our grandmother has a new TV. She doesn't like it.
3 They like their teacher. He helps them.

▶▶ Grammar Reference 2.3 p. 131

3 Complete the sentences with the correct pronoun.

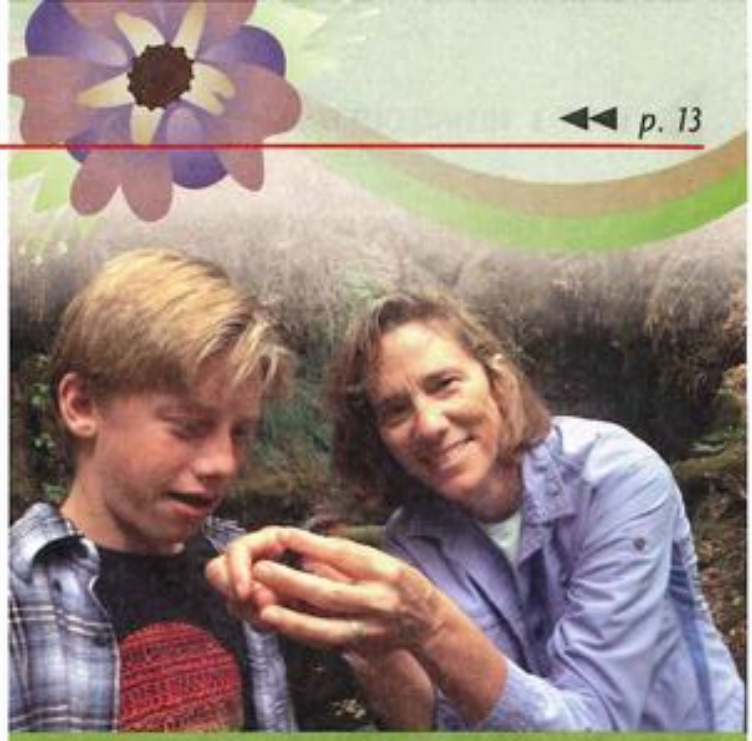
1 I like my brother's new girlfriend, but _she_ doesn't like _me_.
2 Tom has two sons. _____ often plays soccer with _____.
3 That's my dictionary. Can I have _____ back, please?
4 Mr. Banks is our new teacher. We like _____ a lot.
5 Rosa and I are good students. _____ like our teacher and she likes _____.
6 Our teacher gives _____ a lot of homework.
7 Kate likes Joanna, but Maria doesn't like _____ at all.
8 Mike buys a newspaper every day. _____ reads _____ on the train.
9 Look! This is a photo of _____ with my family.
10 Sally works with Paul and Sue. _____ has lunch with _____ every day.

4 Read the text about Claudia Luke. Answer the questions.

- What is her job?
- Who/What does she work with?
- Where does her husband come from? What does he do?
- What does Claudia study?

5 Rewrite the text to make it more natural. Begin like this:
Claudia Luke is American. She lives in California and she's a...

CD1 29 Listen and check.



CLAUDIA LUKE

Her passion is the natural world

Claudia Luke is American. Claudia lives in California and Claudia is a zoologist. Claudia is the director of three research stations at Sonoma State University. Claudia works outside a lot in the mountains on the coast of California. Claudia studies water and fire and how water and fire change the natural world. Claudia likes studying animals such as snakes and mice in snakes' and mice's natural environment. Claudia doesn't like studying snakes and mice in the lab. Claudia's job is very exciting and Claudia loves teaching and working with a lot of different kinds of people, such as academics, researchers, and students. Claudia is married to Chris. Chris is also American and Chris also loves the natural world – Chris is an oceanographer and so Chris studies the oceans. In Claudia and Chris's free time Claudia and Chris often go cycling and walking with Claudia and Chris's dog, Luna. Claudia and Chris love Luna a lot.

1 Work with a partner. Read Lena's application form for a sports and recreation center.

Use the information to talk about Lena.

Her name's …	She … married.	She's … years old.	She's …	She …	Her (email) address/phone numbers …	She likes …

Fit & Healthy

Sports and Recreation Center
APPLICATION FORM

Please write in CAPITALS in BLACK or BLUE ink.

PERSONAL INFORMATION

First Name LENA
Last name PRENTIS
Title Mr./Mrs./(Ms.) *Please select.*
Date of birth mm/dd/yy 02/07/84
Nationality AUSTRALIAN
Address 23A PARK ROAD
Town/City CHICAGO
Zip Code 60641
Email address Len.pren@talktalk.com
Home telephone 630-555-8219
Cell phone 630-555-0257

SPORTS

What are your interests?

- Swimming ☑
- Indoor tennis ☐
- Outdoor tennis ☑
- Badminton ☐
- Squash ☑

HEALTH & FITNESS

What are your interests?

- Gym ☑
- Spa ☐
- Exercise classes ☑

Signature Lena Prentis
Date mm/dd/yy 10/04/11

2 Fill out the same form for you. Compare your form with your partner's.

I like playing squash, but Ana doesn't. *We both like swimming.*

Fit & Healthy

Sports and Recreation Center
APPLICATION FORM

Please write in CAPITALS in BLACK or BLUE ink.

PERSONAL INFORMATION

First Name _____
Last name _____
Title Mr./Mrs./Ms. *Please select.*
Date of birth mm/dd/yy _____
Nationality _____
Address _____
Town/City _____
Zip Code _____
Email address _____
Home telephone _____
Cell phone _____

SPORTS

What are your interests?

- Swimming ☐
- Indoor tennis ☐
- Outdoor tennis ☐
- Badminton ☐
- Squash ☐

HEALTH & FITNESS

What are your interests?

- Gym ☐
- Spa ☐
- Exercise classes ☐

Signature _____
Date mm/dd/yy _____

3 Discuss as a class which sports are popular.

1 Match **A**, **B**, and **C** to make four sentences.

A	B	C
I love my new apartment	**and** **, so** **, but** **because**	I like your apartment too. it's very beautiful. please come and see it soon. unfortunately there isn't a yard.

2 Make similar sentences about where you live using *and, so, but,* or *because.*

I like my house/apartment/room ...

3 Complete the sentences with *and, so, but,* or *because.*

1 I don't have a TV in my bedroom _because_ I don't want one.

2 Our apartment's really small, _____ it's comfortable.

3 The rent is cheap _____ it's above a busy restaurant.

4 My wife and I like sailing, _____ we live near the ocean.

5 We like living here _____ it's across from the park.

6 We don't have a yard, _____ we have a small balcony.

7 There's a lot to do _____ a lot to see in our town.

8 Our best friends live on the next street, _____ we often see them.

4 Read about Megan's new apartment. Choose the correct linking words.

CD1 55 Listen and check.

5 Write some notes about where you live.

- Where is it?
- Is it old or new?
- How many rooms are there?
- Is there a yard?
- Who do you live with?
- Do you like it? Why? What is the best thing?

Talk to a partner about your notes.

6 Write a description of your home. Use linking words to join ideas. Read it aloud to the class.

My new apartment

My new apartment is near the center of town, (1) *but / so* I often walk to work. It's not very big, (2) *but / because* it's very comfortable! There's just one bedroom, a living room, (3) *because / and* a pretty big kitchen with a table in the center. This is good (4) *because / so* I love cooking, (5) *because / and* I can invite my friends to dinner. The living room has one big window. It faces south, (6) *but / so* it's always very sunny. I have two comfortable old armchairs, (7) *but / so* I don't have a sofa (8) *because / and* the room is pretty small.

There isn't a yard, (9) *because / but* there's a small balcony outside my bedroom. I want to put a chair there (10) *and / so* I can sit in the sun on summer afternoons.

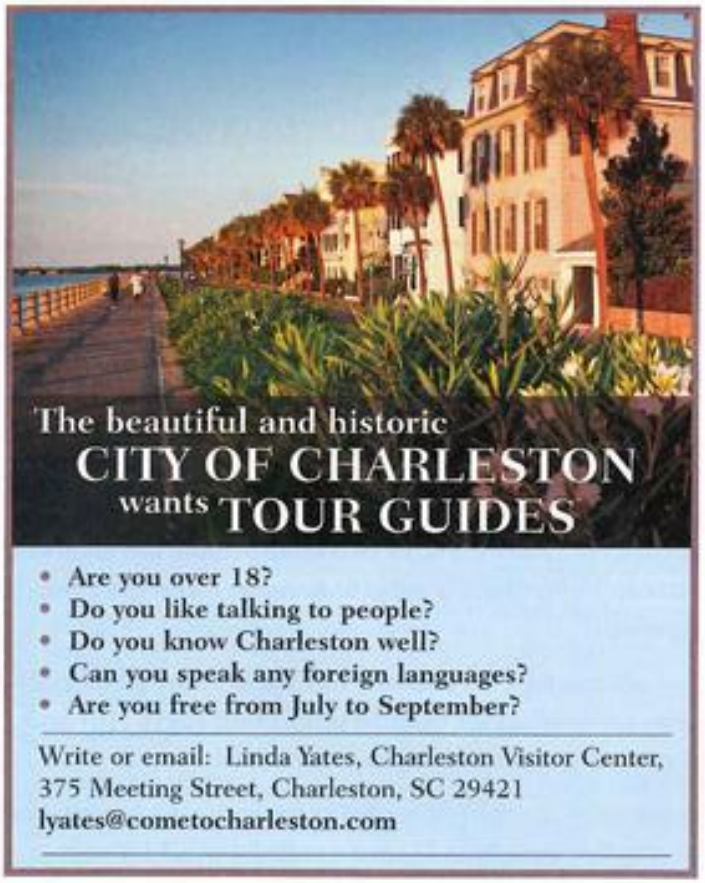
I love my new apartment for many reasons: the big kitchen, the sunny living room, (11) *but / so* most of all I love it (12) *and / because* it's my first home!

1 Carl is a student. He wants a summer job.
Read the information about him.
Ask and answer some questions with a partner.

What's ...? How old ...? What was ...?
Can he ...? What ... like doing?

NAME	CARL HAMPTON
AGE	22
Address	17 Park Street, Charleston, SC 29402
Email address	carl.ham6@yoohoo.com
Cell phone	843-555-2177
Current job	Student
Last job	Ski instructor in Chile
Languages	Spanish, Portuguese
Interests	Skiing, travel, guitar

2 Read the ad for a tour guide.
Why do you think Carl is interested in this job?



3 Read and complete Carl's email applying for the job.

Job as tour guide

from: carl.ham6@yoohoo.com
to: "Linda Yates" <lyates@cometocharleston.com>

Dear Ms. Yates,
I am interested in the job of (1) _____.
I am (2) _____ years old and I (3) _____ in Charleston. I am a (4) _____ at Clemson University, so I am (5) _____ from early June until the end of August.

Last summer I was a (6) _____ at a ski resort in Chile. I (7) _____ speak two (8) _____ really well, Spanish and Portuguese, and I (9) _____ working with people very much. I (10) _____ born in Charleston, so I know the city very well.

I look forward to hearing from you.
Sincerely,
Carl Hampton

4 Read this ad for a job. What is the job? Answer the questions about you.
Write a similar email to Carl's.

The *International School* in
your town:
wants a receptionist.

- Do you like working with people?
- Can you speak English and another language?
- Do you have experience working in an office?
- Can you use a computer?
- Do you know (your town) well?

Email Anne Watson, Director, at awatson@international.school.com

5 Compare your email with a partner's.

1 Work with a partner. Connect the lines in **A** and **C** about Ben Way with a linking word from **B**.

The multimillionaire Ben Way

A	B	C
Ben Way is 35 years old	because	he runs a company called "Rainmakers."
Ben's a computer millionaire.	so	he wasn't always so successful.
As a child he was dyslexic,	and	he didn't do well at school.
He didn't learn to read or write	However,	he was nine and his father gave him a computer.
He wrote his first software program	but	he was only 11.
He didn't go to university	when	at 15 he started his own company.
He first became a millionaire	until	he was just 17.
He continued to be very successful		he was 21.
He won a business award in 2000,		then in 2001 he lost it all.
One year later he started "Rainmakers,"		now he's a millionaire again.

CD2 30 Listen and compare. Take turns reading the sentences about Ben aloud.

2 Write some notes about someone you know who is successful.
Talk to your partner about him or her.

- What's his/her name?
- How old is he/she?
- What does he/she do?
- How do you know him/her?
- Was he/she a good student?
- How did he/she become successful?
- Did he/she have any ups and downs?
- When and where do you see him/her?

3 Complete the text about Gabriella with linking words from exercise 1.

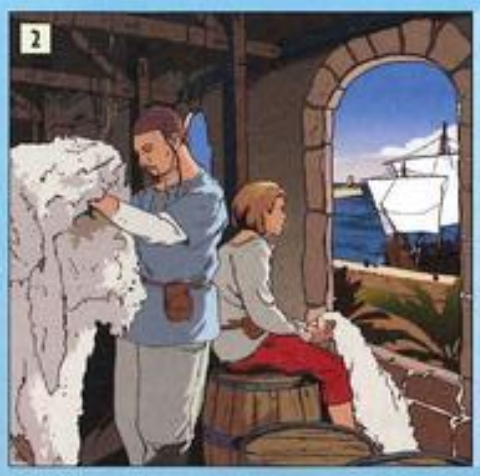
My successful cousin Gabriella

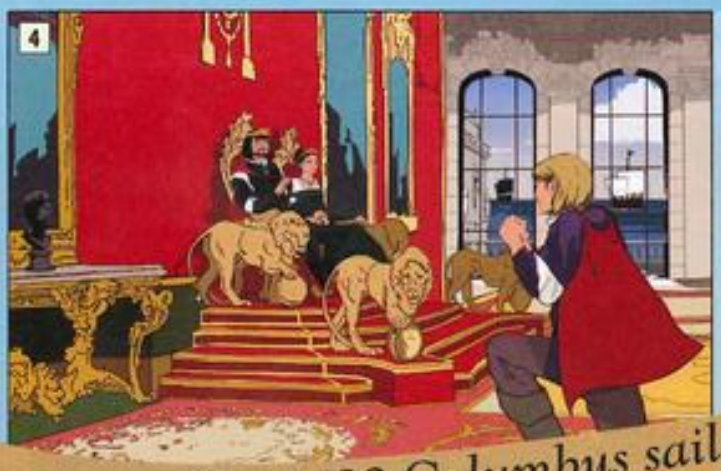
My cousin Gabriella is only 24 years old **(1)** _____ she is already a very successful dress designer.
Gabriella and I played a lot together **(2)** _____ we were children **(3)** _____ we are the same age. We also went to the same school **(4)** _____ we were 18 years old. **(5)** _____, after school we didn't see each other very often.
Gabriella was always very artistic, **(6)** _____ she went to a fashion school in New York. I went to college, and now I'm in law school **(7)** _____ I want to be a lawyer.
Four years later, I'm still a poor student, **(8)** _____ my cousin Gabriella is rich and famous. She won a major fashion award **(9)** _____ she was just 22. Our family is very proud of her.
Gabriella and I now have very different lives, **(10)** _____ we don't get together very often. **(11)** _____, we still stay in touch by email and texting. She's in Milan this week for a fashion show. I love hearing about her life **(12)** _____ it is very exciting.

4 Write about a successful person that you know. Use your notes.

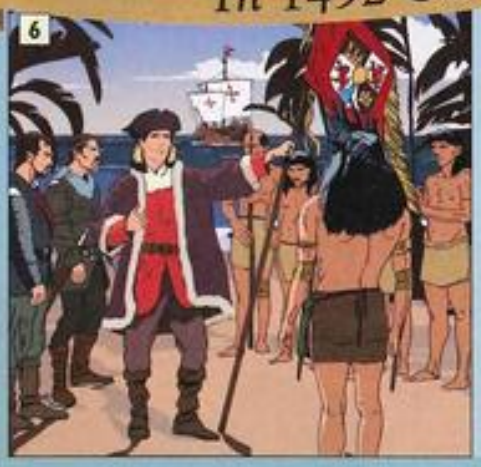
1 Work with a partner. Do you know anything about Christopher Columbus? Look at the pictures and share what you know.

CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS





"In 1492 Columbus sailed the ocean blue!"



Christopher Columbus was a great explorer. For a long time people believed that he discovered America. However, we now know that (1) _____

EARLY LIFE

Columbus was born in 1451 in Genoa, Italy. He was one of five children. He didn't go to school, (2) _____

_____

However, he always wanted to go to sea.

LIFE AT SEA

He became a sailor. Between 1477 and 1485 he visited many countries, including Spain, Iceland, Ireland, Madeira, and West Africa. (3) _____

Columbus wanted to be rich and famous. For eight years (4) _____
Finally they agreed and he got three ships, the *Santa Maria*, the *Pinta*, and the *Niña*, and enough food for a voyage of one year.

He left Spain on August 3, 1492 and sailed west. After three months at sea, (5) _____

They wanted to go home. "Give me just three more days," said Columbus. Two days later, they saw land. It was an island. (6) _____
Next, they sailed to Cuba. Columbus thought he was in China or Japan. The world was a lot bigger than he thought.

Then, unfortunately, near Haiti the *Santa Maria* hit rocks, so Columbus returned to Spain on the *Niña*, leaving 40 sailors on the island to look for gold. (7) _____

_____

FINAL YEARS

Between 1492 and 1504 Columbus made three more voyages across the Atlantic. He took his 13-year-old son Ferdinand with him on the last voyage. He became famous, but not very rich. In the last years of his life, (8) _____.
He died on May 20, 1506.

2 Read these sentences about Columbus. Match them with the pictures.

a ☐ He learned to read and write Spanish during his early travels.

b ☐ the Norseman, Leif Ericson, landed there 500 years before Columbus.

c ☐ he worked with his father, who was a wool worker.

d ☐ The Spanish people gave Columbus a hero's welcome.

e ☐ his sailors became tired and ill.

f ☐ he begged King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella of Spain to give him money to discover new lands.

g ☐ he was in great pain with arthritis and couldn't leave his bed.

h ☐ Columbus named it San Salvador, and its people, Indians.

3 Read the story of Christopher Columbus. Complete it with sentences a–h.

4 What do the highlighted time expressions in the story refer to?

5 Work with a partner. Use the pictures to retell the story of Christopher Columbus in your own words.

Project

Research and make notes about a historical character from your country. Discuss them with your partner. Write the story.

- give an introduction
- include information about his/her early life
- include facts about his/her life
- write about his/her final years

1 Evan is a student in New York and Sarah is a student in Washington, DC. Read the email Sarah wrote after visiting Evan. Answer the questions.

1 Did Sarah enjoy the weekend?
2 Is Evan a good cook?
3 Why does Sarah want the recipe?
4 How did Sarah travel back to Washington, DC?
5 Why did she sleep on the trip?
6 Why is Evan "a real friend"?
7 When would she like to see Evan again?
8 Is the email formal or informal?
9 Did she visit Evan before or after their exams?

Last Weekend Reply

from: sarah.bates4@mail.us
to: evan@mail.com
date: Mon May 3

Hi Evan,

Thanks for last weekend. It was really great. The meal was fantastic – didn't know you could cook! Just kidding ;-) Email me the recipe. I'd like to make shepherd's pie for my friends here – they're always starving!

The trip home was sooooooooooo long and boring – the bus stopped at a highway service station where I had a disgusting turkey and cheese sandwich and a cold coffee. Yuck!

I slept for the rest of the trip – not surprising really – we did dance ALL night! House Rules was a great club, but going to bed at 4 and getting up at 8 to go back to Washington, DC was awful! You're a real friend for getting up early to take me to the bus station!

Everyone here is worried about exams. They start next week, like yours. It was good to forget about them for the weekend! I miss you a lot. Come and visit me soon – the bus ride is cheap.

Can't wait to see you again. Email or text me.

S

Attachments:

2 Sarah also stayed with Evan's parents for a weekend. Read her thank-you email. Answer the questions.

1 When did she visit his parents?
2 Was it the first time?
3 What did she do there?
4 Did she wait until after the exams to see Evan?

3 The email to Evan's parents is more formal than the email to Evan. Compare the beginnings and endings, then compare line by line. What other differences can you find?

THANK YOU

from: sarah.bates4@mail.us
to: owenandowen@mail.us
date: Mon April 21

Dear Mr. and Mrs. Owen,

I'd like to thank you so much for hosting me last weekend. I had a really wonderful time, and I was so happy to finally meet you. The meal you made was delicious. Evan told me that his mother was an excellent cook – and he was right. I also enjoyed our walk – the woods near your house are beautiful.

The trip back was long, and I slept for most of the way. It was very nice of you to drive me to the station so early in the morning. I was very grateful!

It's good to be back at college. I have a lot of work right now before exams start. I know Evan has exams too, so we can't see each other until the end of June – we are just too busy!

I'd love to visit again during the summer vacation with Evan.

Thank you again for everything.

Best wishes,
Sarah

4 Write an informal thank-you email after a visit to a friend. Show it to a partner. Discuss ways you could change it to a more formal style.

1 Read and complete the Grammar Spot.

2 Connect the sentences with *that, who,* or *where.*

1 Jack wrote the letter. It arrived this morning.

_____

2 There's the park. We play soccer in it.

_____

3 This is the hotel. I always stay here.

_____

4 Barbara has a car. It's faster than yours.

_____

5 I met the man. He lives in the house on the corner.

_____

GRAMMAR SPOT

Relative pronouns

Which relative pronoun is for "people", for "things", for "places"? Complete the sentences.

1 We use *that* for _____:
This is the book. It has the information.
This is the book **that** has the information.

2 We use *where* for _____:
There's the house. John and Mary live in it.
There's the house **where** John and Mary live.

3 We use *who* for _____:
I like the girl. She sits next to me.
I like the girl **who** sits next to me.

3 Read about London and complete the text with the words from the box.

a where the Queen lives	c that are much bigger	e where the Romans landed	g that London is famous for
b that my children like best	d who want to drive	f where you can buy anything	h where you can see

My favorite city: **LONDON**

London has a population of about 7,000,000. It is on the River Thames, (1) _____ nearly 2,000 years ago. From about 1800 until World War Two, London was the biggest city in the world, but now there are many cities (2) _____.

There are many things (3) _____. Tourists come from all over the world to visit its historic buildings, such as Buckingham Palace, (4) _____, and the Houses of Parliament, (5) _____ and hear the famous clock, Big Ben. They also come to visit its theaters, its museums, and its many stores, such as Harrods, (6) _____. And of course they want to ride on the London Eye next to the river!

Like many big cities, London has problems with traffic and pollution. Over 1,000,000 people a day use the Underground, London's subway. People (7) _____ into the city center pay a Congestion Charge of £11.50 (nearly $20) but there are still too many cars on the streets. The air isn't clean, but it is cleaner than it was 100 years ago.

For me, the best thing about London is the parks. There are five in the city center. But the place (8) _____ is Hamleys, the biggest toy shop in the world!

4 Write four paragraphs about a city that you like. Begin each paragraph in the same way as the text about London. Answer the questions below. Write 100–150 words.

Paragraph 1 How big is it? Where is it?
Paragraph 2 What is it famous for?
Paragraph 3 Does it have any problems?
Paragraph 4 What do you like best about it?

1 *But, however,* and *although* have similar meanings. Notice how they connect these sentences.

1 I love travel, **but** I don't like flying – I prefer the train.
2 I love travel. **However**, I don't like flying – I prefer the train.
3 **Although** I love travel, I don't like flying – I prefer the train.

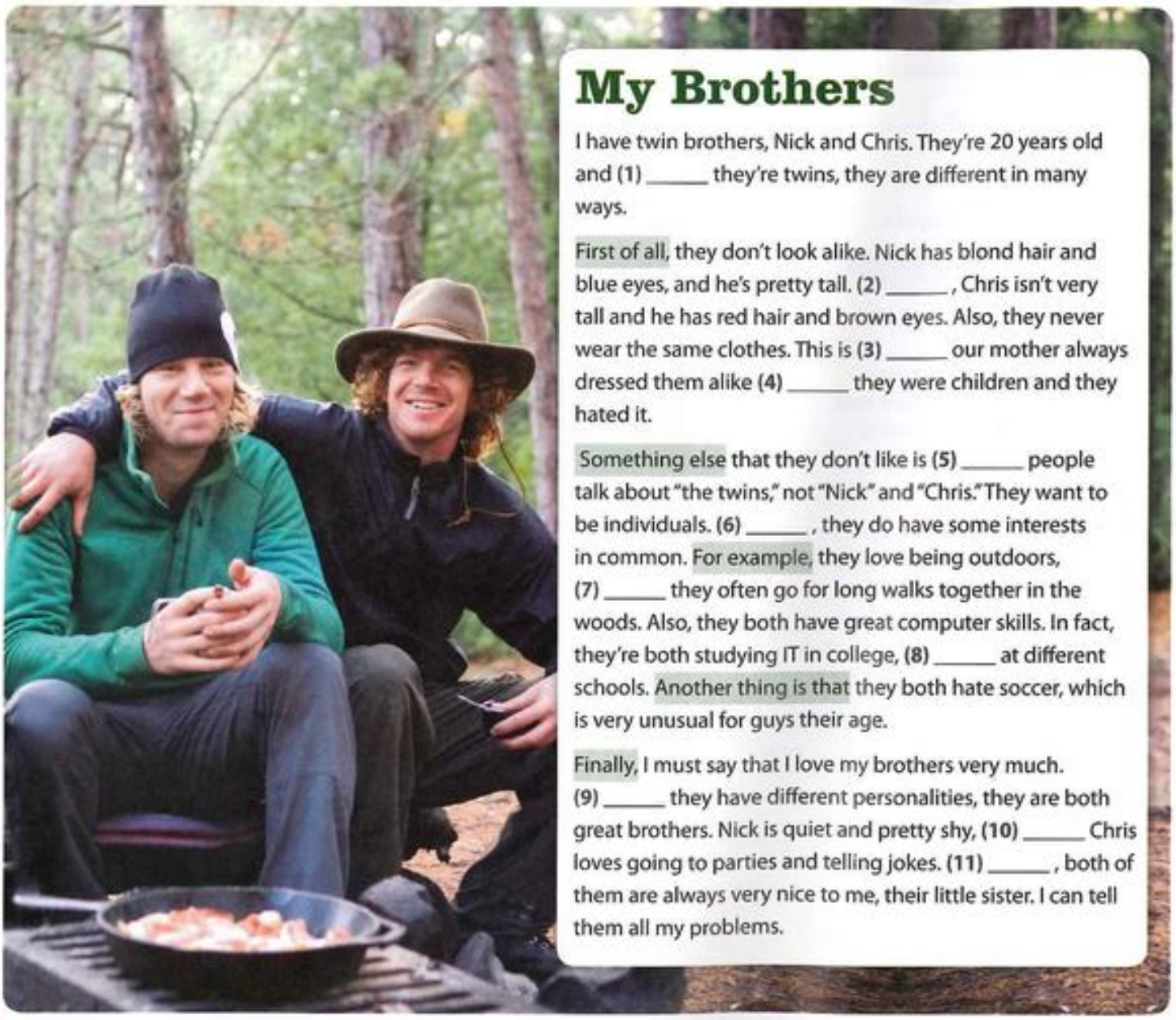
Which two sentences are the most formal?

2 Connect each sentence in three different ways, with *but, However,* and *although.*

1 I like Peter. I don't love him.
2 My apartment has a balcony. It doesn't have a yard.
3 My brother's older than me. He's smaller than me.

3 Complete the text with these linking words.

but	so	because	however	although	when



My Brothers

I have twin brothers, Nick and Chris. They're 20 years old and (1) _____ they're twins, they are different in many ways.

First of all, they don't look alike. Nick has blond hair and blue eyes, and he's pretty tall. (2) _____, Chris isn't very tall and he has red hair and brown eyes. Also, they never wear the same clothes. This is (3) _____ our mother always dressed them alike (4) _____ they were children and they hated it.

Something else that they don't like is (5) _____ people talk about "the twins," not "Nick" and "Chris." They want to be individuals. (6) _____, they do have some interests in common. For example, they love being outdoors, (7) _____ they often go for long walks together in the woods. Also, they both have great computer skills. In fact, they're both studying IT in college, (8) _____ at different schools. Another thing is that they both hate soccer, which is very unusual for guys their age.

Finally, I must say that I love my brothers very much. (9) _____ they have different personalities, they are both great brothers. Nick is quiet and pretty shy, (10) _____ Chris loves going to parties and telling jokes. (11) _____, both of them are always very nice to me, their little sister. I can tell them all my problems.

4 Compare two people in your family, or two friends. Try to use some of the highlighted expressions. Include:

- an introduction
- what they look like
- their personalities
- what they like doing

1 Luke and Tina are going on vacation. Read the information about it.

QUESTIONS	LUKE AND TINA
Where/go?	Brazil
When/go?	October 15
How/travel?	plane and rental car
How long/stay?	10 days
Where/stay?	a house in a village
What/do?	swim, shop in the markets, read and relax, eat in good restaurants

2 Complete the questions in exercise 1 about Luke and Tina's vacation.
Ask and answer questions with a partner.

Where are they going?

To Brazil

CD3 30 Listen and compare.

GRAMMAR SPOT

The Present Continuous can describe future arrangements.

I'm **seeing** the doctor tomorrow.
They're **going** on vacation next week.
What **are** you **doing** this evening?

▶▶ Grammar Reference 11.2 p. 138

3 It's now October 22. Luke and Tina are in Brazil. Read the postcard that they are sending to friends.

Complete it with the adjectives from the box. Use each adjective once only.

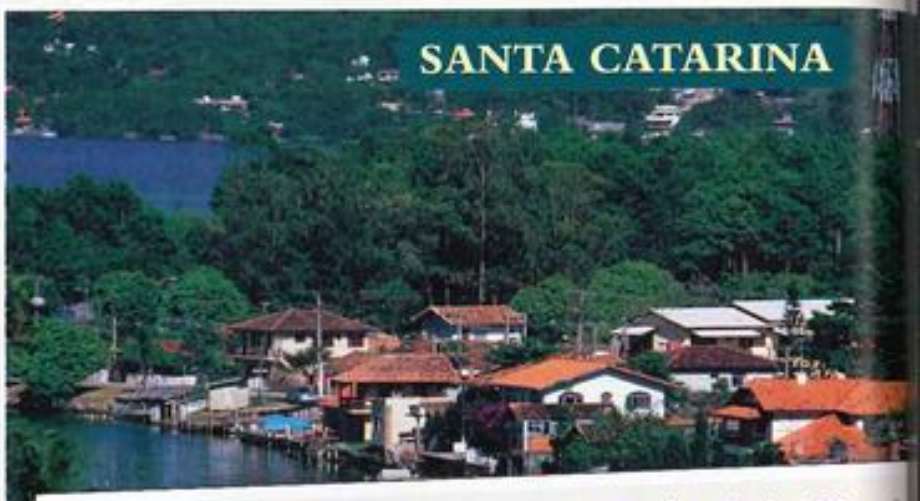
delicious	wonderful	hot	old
beautiful	relaxed	warmer	loud
huge	busy	scared	sunny
colorful	expensive	peaceful	

4 Do you sometimes send or receive postcards? What was the last postcard you received or sent? Where from? Who to/from?

5 Write a vacation postcard to a friend. Write about some of these things:

- where you are
- where you are staying
- the trip
- the weather
- your activities, past, present, and future

Read it aloud to a partner.



Wednesday, October 22

Dear Toby and Mel,

We're having a really (1) _____ time here in southern Brazil. We're renting an (2) _____ house in a (3) _____ village on Santa Catarina Island. It has a swimming pool, which is great because the weather is pretty (4) _____ for October. We usually swim in the afternoons when the water is (5) _____. Yesterday there was a (6) _____ storm – the thunder was so (7) _____ we were pretty (8) _____ and ran into the house. Today it's (9) _____ again and we're going to an outdoor market. We love the markets here. They're really (10) _____, and the things aren't very (11) _____. This evening we're having dinner at a local seafood restaurant – their food looks (12) _____!

It's so (13) _____ here. We feel very (14) _____. We're reading a lot – we never have time to read at home because we're always too (15) _____. Only three more days! See you soon.

Lots of love,
Luke and Tina

1 Work with a partner. Match the question words and answers.

What ...?	Nobody.
Where ...?	Because I needed a vacation.
When ...?	Last September.
Why ...?	Mexico.
Who ...?	A suitcase.
How ...?	The small brown one.
Which ...?	It's mine.
Whose ...?	By boat.

Complete the questions to suit the answers.

2 Read the poem called *Why did you leave?* It has lots of questions in it. Who do you think is asking the questions? Who is answering them? What is the poem about?

3 Discuss with your partner which words best complete the lines of the poem. Read some verses aloud to the class.

4 CD3 49 Listen to the poem. Compare your choices. Do you think any of your ideas are better than those in the poem?

5 Write more verses. Complete these lines.

Who did you meet?
I met ...
Who did you meet?
I met ...

How can we help you?
You ...
How can we help you?
You ...

What have you learned?
I've learned ...
What have you learned?
I've learned ...

Read your verses to the class. Whose lines are most interesting?

Why did you leave?

When did you leave?
I left at four in the _____. (afternoon/morning)
When did you leave?
When the house was _____. (asleep/awake)

Where have you gone?
To a _____, crowded city. (noisy/huge)
Where have you gone?
To a _____ where no one knows me. (hotel/place)

What did you take?
Some money. Not my _____. (photographs /cell phone)
What did you take?
Not much. Just _____. (memories/my passport)

How did you travel?
By _____. By _____. (taxi/land) (plane/sea)
How did you travel?
I traveled alone. I have _____ traveled alone. (always/never)

Why did you leave?
Because I wanted to see _____. (my cousins/the world)
Why did you leave?
Because nobody listened. No one has ever listened to _____. (my problems/me)

Why don't they listen?
I don't know. I have never _____. (known/understood)
Why don't they listen?
Because I have very little to _____. (say/discuss)

When are you coming home?
When I have become _____. (somebody/rich)
Do not wait.

Anon.

Audio Scripts

UNIT 1

CD1 2 The alphabet

A-B-C-D-E-F-G-H-I-J-K-L-M-N-O-P-Q-R-S-T-U-V-W-X-Y-Z

CD1 3 see p. 2

CD1 4

C = Carla, M = Mike
C Hello. My name's Carla. What's your name?
M Mike.
C Where are you from, Mike?
M I'm from Miami. Where are you from?
C I'm from Miami, too!
M Oh! Nice to meet you!

CD1 5

1 What's his last name?
Frasier
2 What's his first name?
Tim
3 Where's he from?
Chicago
4 How old is he?
30
5 What's his phone number?
312-555-0749
6 What's his email address?
tfrasier@mail.com
7 Is he married?
No, he isn't.

CD1 6

1 What's her last name?
2 What's her first name?
3 Where's she from?
4 How old is she?
5 What's her phone number?
6 What's her email address?
7 Is she married?

CD1 7 see p. 4

CD1 8

1 I go to Northeastern University.
2 I have a brother and a sister.
3 I live with my parents in a house in Boston.
4 My family really likes Lily!

CD1 9

1 Where are you from?
2 "Are you from Boston?" "Yes, I am."
3 "How old are you?" "I'm 15."
4 "Are your sisters married?" "No, they aren't."
5 I like you. You're my friend.
6 Marc isn't from the US, he's from Canada.
7 "Is your mother a doctor?" "No, she isn't."
8 I'm not Brazilian. I'm Costa Rican.

CD1 10

1 She's from Mexico.
2 What's his name?
3 Your English is good.
4 Where's she from?
5 He's a teacher from Canada.
6 We aren't American.

CD1 11 Spelling

1 My name's Vanessa. That's V-A-N-E-S-S-A. Vanessa.
2 My first name's Joseph. That's J-O-S-E-P-H. My last name's Bowen. That's B-O-W-E-N. Joseph Bowen.
3 My name's Katie Matthews. That's Katie, K-A-T-I-E, Matthews M-A-T-T-H-E-W-S.
4 My email address is g.hunt8@wahoo.com. That's G dot H-U-N-T eight at wahoo dot com.
5 My email address is zac.yates@mail.co.us. That's Zac, Z-A-C, dot Yates, Y-A-T-E-S, at mail dot co dot US.

CD1 12 see p. 7

CD1 13

1 Where's Amanda from? Brazil.
2 Where's her school? In a fun part of Boston.
3 What's her teacher's name? Charlotte.
4 What's her family's name? Wilson.
5 Where's their house? In Boston.
6 How old are the two brothers? Matt's 16 and Nick's 19.
7 Is the weather OK? Yes, it is. It's cold and sunny.

CD1 14

1 P Goodbye, Amanda! Have a good day at school!
A Thank you, Peter. And you have a good day at work!
2 C Good morning, Amanda. Where's your homework?
A It's here, Charlotte.
3 A Hello, Cristo. Where are you from?
CR I'm from Mexico.
4 A A ticket, please.
B The Museum of Fine Arts is free for college students.
A Oh, good! Thank you!
5 A A coffee, please.
D Certainly. Here you are.

CD1 15

Joseph My family isn't very big. I have a sister, Andrea, she's 18, and a brother Richard, he's 25. They're not married. I'm married, uh, my wife's name is Isabel. We have two children, a daughter, Nancy, that's N-A-N-C-Y, she's 4, and a son, Tom, he's only six months old. We live near my parents. My dad's name is John, and my mom's is Odile, that's O-D-I-L-E. She's French. My grandmother lives with them, her name's Marie. She's my mom's mom.

CD1 16

1 A Hello, Sally. How are you?
B OK, thank you. And you?
A Fine, thanks.
2 A Hi, Pete. How are you?
B All right, thanks. And you?
A Not bad, thank you.
3 A Good morning, Mr. Simpson. How are you?
B Pretty good, thank you. And you?
A Fine, thank you.
4 A Hello, Mrs. Brown. How are you?
B Fine, thank you. And you?
A Not bad.

CD1 17

1 A Bye, Mom! It's time for school.
B Goodbye, honey. Have a good day!
A Thanks. See you later.
2 C Good morning!
D Good morning! Can I have a coffee, an espresso, please?
C Yes, of course! Anything else?
D No, thank you.
3 E Good afternoon! Can I help you?
F No, thank you. We're just looking.
E That's OK.
4 G Frank. This is Gina. She's from our New York office.
H Hello, Gina. Nice to meet you.
I Hello, Frank. Pleased to meet you, too.
5 J Thank goodness it's Friday! Bye, Ian.
K Bye, Derek. Have a good weekend.
J Thanks. Same to you.
K See you on Monday.
6 L Good night! Sleep well!
M Good night! See you in the morning.

UNIT 2

CD1 18 see p. 10

CD1 19

/s/ likes works walks
/z/ comes goes earns plays loves
/ɪz/ teaches researches

CD1 20

1 Andrew is an engineer. Claudia is a zoologist.
2 She comes from the US. He comes from New Zealand.
3 He lives in Scotland. She lives in California.
4 She works in the mountains. He works on an oil rig.
5 He earns £200 a day. She earns $75,000 a year.
6 She likes her job, and he likes his job, too.
7 He goes to the gym in his free time. She walks her dog. Her dog's name is Luna.
8 She's married. Her husband's name is Chris. Andrew isn't married.

CD1 21 Questions and negatives

1 What does Andrew do? He's an engineer.
2 Where does he come from? New Zealand.
3 Does he live in Scotland? Yes, he does.
4 Does he live in New Zealand? No, he doesn't.
5 He isn't married. He doesn't have any children.

CD1 22 see p. 11

CD1 23

1 Where does Andrew work?
On an oil rig.
2 Does he work hard?
Yes, he does.
3 How much does he earn?
$330 a day.
4 What does he do in his free time?
He goes to the gym and he plays pool.
5 Does he like his job?
Yes, he does.
6 Does he have a dog?
No, he doesn't.

CD1 24 Stress and intonation

1 Chiaki comes from Osaka.
2 She lives in Japan.
3 She has one son.
4 She goes to the beach.
5 David's English.
6 He works all over the world.
7 He has two daughters.
8 He writes songs in his free time.

CD1 25

1 A Chiaki comes from Osaka.
B Yes, that's right.
2 A She lives in Japan.
B No, she doesn't. She lives in Florida.
3 A She has a son.
B No, she doesn't. She has a daughter.
4 A She goes to the beach.
B Yes, that's right.
5 A David's English.
B No, he isn't. He's French.
6 A He works all over the world.
B Yes, that's right.
7 A He has two daughters.
B No, he doesn't. He has a son and a daughter.
8 A He writes songs in his free time.
B Yes, that's right.

CD1 26 Talking about family and friends

1 A My husband comes from Korea.
B Where exactly in Korea?
A From the capital, Seoul.
2 A My grandmother lives in the next town.
B Does she visit you often?
A Yes, she does. Every Sunday.
3 A My mother loves reading.
B What does she read?
A Detective stories.
4 A My father travels a lot for his job.
B Where does he go?
A He's in Tokyo this week.
5 A My sister speaks Spanish very well. She wants to learn Chinese, too.
B Does she want to be an interpreter?
A No, she doesn't. She wants to be a teacher.
6 A My little brother watches TV a lot.
B What does he like watching?
A Sports, sports, sports, and, uh, soccer!
7 A My friend Tom writes a blog.
B What does he write about?
A Everything and everybody!

CD1 27

1 A What does your sister do?
B She's a student. She wants to be a doctor so she studies a lot.
2 A Does Peter like his new job?
B No, he doesn't. He works very hard and he doesn't earn a lot of money.
3 A Is that your dog?
B No, he isn't. He's my mother's. He goes with her everywhere. She loves him a lot. His name's Boris.
4 A Your friend Elena speaks English very well.
B Yes, she does. She goes to Canada every summer.
5 A What does your grandfather do all the time?
B Well, he watches TV a lot, but on Saturdays he plays golf with friends, and on Sundays he visits us.

CD1 28

1 He likes his job.
2 She loves working.
3 He isn't married.
4 Does he have three children?
5 Where does he go?

CD1 29 Her passion is the natural world

Claudia Luke is American. She lives in California and she's a zoologist. She is the director of three research stations at Sonoma State University. She works outside a lot in the mountains on the coast of California. Claudia studies water and fire and how they change the natural world. She likes studying animals such as snakes and mice in their natural environment. She doesn't like studying them in the lab. Her job is very exciting and she loves teaching and working with a lot of different kinds of people, such as academics, researchers, and students. Claudia is married to Chris. He is also American and he also loves the natural world – he is an oceanographer and so he studies the oceans. In their free time Claudia and Chris often go cycling and walking with their dog, Luna. They love Luna a lot.

CD1 30 An interview

I = Interviewer, S = Student

I Can I ask you some questions about your school?
S Yes, of course.
I How many students are in your school?
S There are 650 now.
I That's a lot. And how many teachers?
S Ten teachers.
I And what time do your classes start?
S Five o'clock every day.
I How much is the school?
S Oh, the school is free.
I Very good! And your teacher, what's your teacher's name?
S Babur Ali. He's only sixteen.
I Sixteen! That's amazing! Is he a good teacher?
S He is very good.
I What does he teach?
S He teaches English, Bengali, history, and math.
I That's a lot of subjects. Does he work hard?
S Oh, yes, very hard. He studies all day and he teaches us every evening. He's the best teacher in the world!

CD1 31 Jobs

1 She's a hairstylist. She cuts hair.
2 He's a pilot. He flies from LAX airport.
3 She's a receptionist. She works in a hotel.
4 He's an architect. He designs buildings.
5 She's a lawyer. She works for a family law firm.
6 He's a taxi driver. He knows the streets of New York.
7 She's a journalist. She writes news stories.
8 He's a dentist. He takes care of people's teeth.
9 He's a nurse. He works in the City Hospital.
10 She's an accountant. She likes working with numbers.

CD1 32

1 A What does your brother do?
B He's a journalist. He writes for *USA Today*.
A Oh, that's a good newspaper.
2 C What does your father do?
D He's an accountant. He works for a big firm in the city.
C And your mother? What does she do?
D She's a teacher. She teaches French and Spanish.
3 E Does your sister work downtown?
F Yes, she does. She's a receptionist. She works at the Ritz Hotel.
E Oh, that's near where I work.
4 G Are you a doctor?
H No, I'm not. I'm a nurse.
G Oh, but I want to see a doctor.
5 J I want to be a pilot when I'm big.
K I want to be a lawyer. They earn lots of money.
J Pilots earn a lot too, *and* they travel the world.

CD1 33 What time is it?

It's five o'clock.
It's eight o'clock.
It's five thirty.
It's eleven thirty.
It's quarter after five.
It's quarter after two.
It's quarter to six.
It's quarter to nine.
It's five after five.
It's ten after five.
It's twenty after five.
It's twenty-five after five.
It's twenty-five to six.
It's twenty to six.
It's ten to six.
It's five to six.

CD1 34 see p. 17

CD1 35

1 A Excuse me. Can you tell me the time, please?
B Yes, of course. It's just after six o'clock.
A Thank you very much.
2 C Excuse me. Can you tell me the time, please?
D I'm sorry. I don't have the time.
C Oh, that's OK.
3 E Excuse me. What time does the bus leave?
F At ten after ten.
E Thank you. What time is it now?
F It's about five after.
E Five after ten?!
F No, no, five after *nine*. You're OK. No need to hurry.
4 G When does this lesson end?
H At four o'clock.
G Oh, no! It's only quarter after three!

UNIT 3

CD1 36 Claire's two jobs!

"Hi, I'm Claire Higgins. I'm 24 years old and I live in New York City. I'm always very busy, but I'm very happy. From Monday to Friday I work in a bookstore, the Strand Bookstore in Manhattan. Then on Saturdays I have another job – I'm a singer with a band. It's great because I love books and I love singing. On weekdays I usually finish work at 6 o'clock, but sometimes I stay late, until 9 or 10 o'clock at night. On Saturday evenings, I sing in nightclubs in all parts of the city, I don't go to bed until 3 or 4 o'clock in the morning. On Sundays, I don't do much at all. I often eat in a little restaurant near my apartment. I never cook on Sundays. I'm too tired."

CD1 37

1 Where do you live?
In New York.
2 Do you like your job?
Yes, I do.
3 Do you relax on weekends?
No, I don't.
4 Why don't you relax on weekends?
Because I sing in nightclubs.

CD1 38

I = Interviewer, C = Claire

I Hi, Claire. Nice to meet you.
C Nice to meet you too.
I Now, I hear you often sing in nightclubs here in New York City.
C That's right. I love singing.
I And how old are you, Claire?
C I'm 24.
I And do you live in New York?
C Yes, I do. I live downtown near the river.
I And where do you work?
C I work in a bookstore. The Strand Bookstore in Manhattan.
I What time do you finish work?
C Well, I usually finish at 6 o'clock but sometimes I stay late, until 9 or 10 o'clock, but I always finish at 6 on Saturdays because I sing in the evening.
I How many jobs do you have?
C Just two! The bookstore and singing.
I And do you like your jobs?
C Oh, yes! I love them both.
I Why do you like them?
C Because I love singing and I love books. I'm lucky. I love my work.
I What do you do on Sundays?
C I don't do much at all. I often eat in a little restaurant near my apartment.
I Do you sometimes cook on Sundays?
C Never! I'm too tired.
I I understand that! Thank you very much for your time, Claire.
C My pleasure.

CD1 39

1 Claire, why do you like your job?
2 Where do you live in New York?
3 What do you do on Tuesday evenings?
4 He really loves singing.
5 She eats a lot.
6 What does she do on Sundays?

CD1 40 Talking about you

1 What time do you get up?
At about 7 o'clock on weekdays.
2 Where do you go on vacation?
To Thailand or Hawaii.
3 What do you do on Sundays?
I always relax.
4 When do you do your homework?
When I get home.
5 Who do you live with?
My parents and brothers.
6 Why do you like your job?
Because it's interesting.
7 How do you travel to school?
Usually by bus.
8 Do you go out on Friday evenings?
Yes, I do sometimes.

CD1 41 In my free time

1 **Andy**
A I play tennis a lot. I'm not very good but I like playing.
B When do you play?
A Oh, usually in the summer, but sometimes in spring and fall if it's sunny.

2 **Roger**
R My favorite sport is skiing. I go skiing with my family every year. We all love it.
B When do you go?
R Always in January. We go to Canada.
B And are you a good skier?
R I'm OK. My wife's good, the kids are really good – but I'm just OK.

3 **Linda**
B Do you go to the gym every day?
L Yes, I do, every day, every morning before work.
B And do you go swimming there?
L Yes. I swim every morning too. Do you go to the gym?
B Well uh, no, I don't. I like my bed in the morning!

4 **Ben & Josh**
B You like a lot of sports, don't you?
Ben Oh yeah, my favorite is windsurfing. Me and my brother go to surf school every summer and … and we play golf and soccer, of course.
B All outdoor sports?
J Uh no, we watch sports a lot on TV, and we play computer games after school.
B So, not a lot of time for homework?
J Well …

5 **Sandra & Brian**
S In winter we love evenings at home.
B What do you do? Watch TV?
S Well, yes, sometimes. We like all the cooking shows. I love cooking.
B Oh, we love those shows too, but we often play cards on winter evenings.
BR We like cards too, but we only play when we're on vacation in the summer. It's a "vacation thing" in our family.
B What do you play?
BR Well, usually we play …

CD1 42

1 I often watch TV.
2 I sometimes watch French movies.
3 I always listen to music in the car.
4 I don't play the piano.
5 I sometimes play cards with friends.
6 I go dancing a lot.
7 I go shopping every Saturday.
8 I get up late on Sundays.
9 I often cook dinner for my friends.

CD1 43 Song Extract from *Twentysomething* by Jamie Cullum

CD1 44 Dr. Susan Hall – The work-life balance

Of course, work is important for us all, it gives us money to live, it gives structure to our everyday lives. But, for a happy, balanced life, it's also important to "play" sometimes. It's important to find time to relax with friends and family. It's not good to think about work all the time. I know from my work as a doctor that it's sometimes difficult not to take your work problems home – but if you take your problems home you never relax, and it's difficult for your family, and bad for your health. Don't live to work, work to live! Life is more than work.

CD1 45 Social expressions

1 A Bye! Have a nice day!
H Thanks. You too. See you later.
2 H I'm sorry I'm late. The traffic's very bad this morning.
B That's OK. Come and sit down.
3 B What's the matter, Hakan? Do you have a problem?
H Yes. I don't understand this exercise.
4 H Can I open the window? It's really warm in here.
B Sure. Good idea. It is hot in here, isn't it?
5 H Can you help me? What does *bilingual* mean?
B It means *in two languages*.
6 C Do you want a macchiato?
H Excuse me? Can you say that again?
7 H Excuse me! Is this seat free?
D Yes, it is. Please sit down if you want.
8 E *Fala Português?*
H I'm sorry. I don't speak Portuguese.
9 A Hi, Hakan! How was your day?
H Good, thanks. Really interesting. How about yours?

CD1 46

1 see p. 25
2 H I'm sorry I'm late. The traffic's very bad this morning.
B That's OK. Come and sit down.
H Thanks.
B We're on page 28.
3 B What's the matter, Hakan? Do you have a problem?
H Yes, I don't understand this exercise.
B Don't worry. I'll help you with it.
H Oh, thank you very much.
4 H Can I open the window? It's really warm in here.
B Sure. Good idea. It is hot in here, isn't it?
H Very. Thanks a lot.
B That's all right. I think we all need some fresh air.
5 H Can you help me? What does *bilingual* mean?
B It means *in two languages*.
H Oh, right, of course. I need to buy a bilingual dictionary!
B Yeah, that's a very good idea!
6 C Do you want a macchiato?
H Excuse me? Can you say that again?
C A macchiato. Do you want a macchiato?
H Sorry. What is "a macchiato"?
C It's a strong white coffee.
H Uh yes, OK. Fine. I'll try one. Thank you!
7 H Excuse me! Is this seat free?
D Yes, it is. Please sit down if you want.
H Thanks very much. That's very nice of you.
D No problem. Are you a new student?
H Yes, I am.
D Are you having a good time?
H Yes. It's getting better, thanks.
8 E *Fala Português?*
H I'm sorry. I don't speak Portuguese.
E Oh! That's OK. It doesn't matter.
H Can I help you?
E No. Don't worry. I need some help with my homework, but I can do it.
H All right.
9 A Hi, Hakan! How was your day?
H Good, thanks. Really interesting. How about yours?
A Oh, not bad. Just another day at work.
H Well, tomorrow's the weekend.
A Yes, thank goodness!

UNIT 4

CD1 47

living room
sofa
DVD player
armchair
bookshelves
mirror
kitchen
stove
refrigerator
table
oven
other room
washing machine
street
bus stop
post office
café
sidewalk
drugstore
traffic lights

CD1 48 An apartment to rent

J = Josie, E = Emily
J Here's an apartment on Franklin Street!
E Is it nice?
J Well, there's a big living room.
E Oh, that's good.
J And there are two bedrooms.
E Great! What about the kitchen?
J There's a new kitchen.
E Wow! How many bathrooms are there?
J Uh … there's just one bathroom.
E Is there a yard?
J No, there isn't a yard.
E That's okay. It sounds great!

CD1 49

Is there a shower?
Yes, there is.

Is there a washing machine?
Yes, there is.

Is there a refrigerator?
Yes, there is.

Is there a dining room?
No, there isn't.

How many bedrooms are there?
Two.

How many bathrooms are there?
One.

How many armchairs are there?
Two.

Are there any pictures?
No, there aren't.

Are there any bookshelves?
Yes, there are.

Are there any carpets?
No, there aren't.

CD1 50 Prepositions

1 The apartment's on Franklin Street.
2 It's above a drugstore on the second floor.
3 The drugstore is next to a clothing store.
4 There's a cell phone store across from the clothing store.
5 There's a post office near the apartment.
6 The bus stop is outside the drugstore.
7 There's a bench under a tree.

CD1 51 What's in your picture?

The apartment is near the center of town. It has four bedrooms, a nice living room with views of the town, and two bathrooms. The kitchen is very big, and there's a dining room next to it.

The apartment is on the second floor. In the living room there are two sofas and an armchair. There are a lot of pictures on the wall. There's a carpet in front of the fireplace, and there's a TV and a DVD player. There is a table in front of the sofa.

CD1 52 A new apartment

1 She has some plates.
2 She has a lot of clothes.
3 She doesn't have any glasses.
4 She has some pictures.
5 She doesn't have any mugs.
6 She has a lot of shoes.
7 She doesn't have any towels.
8 She has some cups.

CD1 53 *this/that/these/those*

J = Josie, S = Salesperson, E = Emily

1 J How much is this lamp, please?
S It's $45.
2 J I like that picture.
E Yes, it's cool!
3 J How much are these glasses?
S They're $15.
4 J I love those towels!
E They're great!
5 J Look at those flowers!
E They're beautiful!
6 E Do you like this teakettle?
J Yeah! It's a great color!
7 J How much are these mugs?
S $5 each.
8 J Look at that coat!
E You don't need any more clothes!

CD1 54 What's in your bag?

Christina What's in my bag? Well, there's my phone, and my wallet, of course. I have some pens. I always have some pens. A blue one, and a red one. And there are my glasses. I need them for driving. And I have a lipstick … . Oh, and keys. I have some keys, my house keys, and my car keys. And that's all!

CD1 55 Describing your home

My new apartment

My new apartment is near the center of town, so I often walk to work. It's not very big, but it's very comfortable! There's just one bedroom, a living room, and a pretty big kitchen with a table in the center. This is good because I love cooking, and I can invite my friends to dinner. The living room has one big window. It faces south, so it's always very sunny. I have two comfortable old armchairs, but I don't have a sofa because the room is pretty small.

There isn't a yard, but there's a small balcony outside my bedroom. I want to put a chair there, so I can sit in the sun on summer afternoons.

I love my new apartment for many reasons: the big kitchen, the sunny living room, but most of all I love it because it's my first home!

CD1 56 see p. 32

CD1 57

1 A Do you know Alice has a new boyfriend?
B Really? Is he nice?
A Yeah! He's great!
B Ooh! What's his name?
A James.
B Good for Alice!
2 C Ben has a new apartment.
D Wow! Where is it?
C In the center of town.
D Is it nice?
C Oh, yes. It's fantastic! The living room is fabulous!
3 E What a horrible day!
F Yes, it is! Rain, rain, rain. It's terrible weather at the moment.
E Oh, well! Tomorrow's another day!
4 G Mmm! This is an excellent meal!
H Thank you! I'm glad you like it.
5 I I love your new shoes! They're great!
J They're nice, aren't they? They're Italian.
I The color's amazing! Red! Wow!
6 K We have a new teacher. Her name's Nancy.
L Is she nice?
K No, she's awful! I don't like her.
L Why?
K I don't understand her. She talks, and talks, and talks all the time!

CD1 58 Adverb + adjective

1 A Look at Angela's car! It's a Mercedes!
B Wow! They're really expensive! Is it fast?
A Very fast.
2 C Does Tom have a lot of money?
D Well, he has a really beautiful house with a very big yard, and a swimming pool.
C Mm. He's very rich, isn't he?
3 E Do you like my new jeans?
F Yeah! They're really nice! What make are they?
E They're Prada.
F How much were they?
E They weren't expensive. Well, not *very* expensive.
4 G Look! That's Peter's new girlfriend!
H Oh! She's pretty. How old is she?
G Twenty-eight.
H Wow! That's old!
G Twenty-eight? She isn't very old!
5 I Maria's very smart, isn't she?
J Oh, yes. She's really intelligent. She knows everything.
I Do you like her?
J No, not really. She isn't very nice to talk to.
I No, I don't like her either.

CD1 59 see p. 33

CD1 60

one and a half
two and a quarter
six point eight
seventeen point five
two one two, five five five, six four nine oh
nine one seven, five five five six six seven eight

CD1 61

1 There are thirty students in my class – seventeen boys and thirteen girls.
2 I live at number 62 Station Road. My cell phone number is 860-555-9734.
3 My father works in a big hotel. There are 460 rooms on sixteen floors.
4 The population of my town is 280,000.

CD1 62 Prices

1 "How much is this book?" "Six dollars and fifty cents."
2 "How much are these pictures?" "Twenty-four dollars each."
3 I only earn $30,000 a year.
4 "How much is this car?" "$9,500."
5 "Just this postcard, please." "That's 79 cents, please."
6 "Can I have these jeans, please?" "Sure, that's $49."
7 "How much is a round-trip ticket from New York to Chicago?" "$250."
8 There are about 1.4 dollars to the euro.

UNIT 5

CD2 2 Superman!

Superman comes from the Planet Krypton. He can fly at the speed of light; he can see through walls; he can jump over tall buildings; he can speak every language; he can turn back time. There's nothing Superman can't do!

CD2 3 Superman is amazing!

A = Alfie, I = Ivy

A Superman's amazing!
I Really? What can he do?
A He can do everything!
I No, he can't!
A Yes, he can. He can fly at the speed of light, he can see through buildings, *and* he can speak every language in the world!

CD2 4

A = Alfie, I = Ivy

A He can speak every language in the world!
I Really? I don't believe that.
A Well, he can! Can you speak any languages?
I Yes, I can. I can speak Spanish and a little Chinese. We learn them at school.
A Well, I can speak Spanish too.
I Oh, yeah?!
A I can say "Hola!" and "Gracias."
I That's nothing! You can't speak Spanish at all!
A Well, I can skateboard! You can't!
I I don't want to skateboard. I like other things. What about skiing? Can you ski?
A Yeah, I can ski a little, but my mom and dad can ski really well!
I I love skiing. I can ski really well.
A OK, OK, we can do some things, but Superman can do *everything*. There's nothing Superman can't do.
I Oh, you and Superman! Remember he's not real, he's only a …

CD2 5

1 "Can you speak any languages?"
"Yes, I can. I can speak Spanish and a little Chinese."
2 "You can't speak Spanish at all!"
3 "I can skateboard! You can't!"
4 "Can you ski?"
"I can ski a little, but my mom and dad can ski really well!"
5 "Superman can do *everything*. There's nothing Superman can't do."

CD2 6 see p. 35

CD2 7 Ivy can't cook. Can you?

Ivy: So what can I do? Speak a foreign language … Hmm. Well, yes, I can speak Spanish, and a little Chinese. Cooking? No, I can't cook at all. My mom can, she's a great cook! Hmm. Sports – well, I think I'm pretty good at sports – my cousin Alfie says I'm not because I can't skateboard, but skateboarding's not a sport. I can swim, of course. Everyone can swim, can't they? I can swim very well, I like swimming, and I like tennis. I can play tennis pretty well. But skiing is my best sport, I love it, and I can ski really well, really fast. Musical instruments? Uh, … well, no, I can't play any musical instruments. My dad can play the guitar really well, and my mom can play the piano a little, but I can't play anything at all.

CD2 8

1 She can speak Chinese a little.
2 She can't cook at all.
3 She can swim very well.
4 She can play tennis pretty well.
5 She can ski really well.
6 Her dad can play the guitar really well.
7 Her mom can play the piano a little.
8 She can't play anything at all.

CD2 9 *can* or *can't*?

1 She can cook.
2 I can't hear you.
3 They can't come to the party.
4 Can you see my glasses anywhere?
5 You can't always get what you want.
6 Can you do the homework?

CD2 10 see p. 36

CD2 11 Pronunciation

1 It was Monday.
2 We were at school.
3 "Was it sunny?" "Yes, it was."
4 "Was it cold?" "No, it wasn't."
5 "Were you at school?" "Yes, we were."
6 "Were they at school?" "No, they weren't."

CD2 12 Ryan Wang – Pianist

1 He was born in 2008 in Vancouver, Canada.
2 He can play the piano really well.
3 He could play the piano when he was four.
4 He could play the piano very well after a year and a half.
5 When he was five, he played with the Shanghai Symphony. He was a big success.

CD2 13 Aelita Andre – Artist

Aelita Andre is an artist and a child prodigy. She was born on January 9, 2007 in Melbourne, Australia. She started to paint when she was just nine months old. And she could paint beautifully when she was just one year old. When she was two, some of her art was in an exhibition. Today, Aelita has fans around the world.

CD2 14 Pablo Picasso
October 25, 1881 – April 8, 1973

A Hey, look at that painting! It's a Picasso!
B Oh, yes! It's wonderful!
A Where was Picasso born?
B In Málaga.
A Oh, so he was Spanish?
B Yes, he was.
A Were his parents rich?
B Well, they weren't rich and they weren't poor. His father, Don José, was a painter and a professor of art. His mother, Doña Maria, was a homemaker.
A So was Picasso good at drawing when he was young?
B Oh, yes. He was a child prodigy. He could draw before he could speak. His first word was *lápiz*, which is Spanish for *pencil*.
A Wow! What a story!

CD2 15 Noun + noun

1 A Excuse me! Is there a post office near here?
B Yes. Can you see the bus stop over there?
A Yes, I can.
B Well, it's next to the bus stop. Near the traffic lights.
A Thanks.
2 A I can't find my sunglasses.
B Not again! Look in your handbag!
A Where's my handbag?
B It's in the living room.
A Oh yes! There it is, and there they are!
3 A Excuse me! Is there a gas station near here?
B A gas station? Yeah. Go past the train station and the bookstore. It's just before the traffic lights.
A Great. Thank you.

CD2 16 Verb + noun

1 A You send a lot of text messages!
B I know. My cell phone is my best friend!
2 A Do you earn a lot of money?
B What a question! Mind your own business!
3 A Do you live on the third floor?
B Yes, I have a great view. I can see right over the town.
4 A Do you wear a suit and tie when you go to work?
B No, no. Where I work is very casual. I wear jeans and a T-shirt.
5 A Can you play the guitar?
B Yes, I can. And the piano. And the violin.
6 A Can you ride a motorcycle?
B I can. Do you want to come for a ride? You can sit on the back.
7 A Can you drive a car?
B Of course not! I'm only 14!
8 A You have a full-time job. Who takes care of your children?
B They go to day care.
9 A Do you watch TV a lot?
B No, not really, just in the morning, and in the evening, and sometimes in the afternoon.
10 A I can't speak any foreign languages.
B I can. I can speak three languages. Japanese, Spanish, and Portuguese.

CD2 17 Prepositions

1 A Do you like listening to music?
B Yes, of course. I have it all on my phone.
2 A What kind of music do you like?
B All kinds, but especially jazz.
3 A Where's your girlfriend from? Is she Mexican?
B No, she isn't. She's from Brazil. She speaks Portuguese.
4 A Is Paula married to Mike?
B Yes, she is. Do you know her?
5 A Do you want to come shopping with me?
B Oh, yes. Can you wait a minute? I'll get my coat.
6 A Were there any good shows on television last night?
B I don't know. I was on my computer all evening.
7 A What do you want for your birthday?
B Can I have a smartphone? Or is that too expensive?
8 A Can I speak to Dave? Is he at work today?
B Sorry, he's on vacation all this week. He's back next week.

CD2 18 Polite requests

1 A Can I have a coffee, please?
B Yes, of course.
2 C Can you open the door for me, please?
D Sure. No problem.
C Thanks.
3 E Could I have the menu, please?
F Certainly, ma'am.
4 G Could you tell me the time, please?
H It's 10:30.
G Thanks a lot.

CD2 19

Can I ...? Can I have a ...?
Can I have a coffee, please?

Could you ...? Could you tell me ...?
Could you tell me the time, please?

CD2 20

1 A Can I have a turkey and cheese sandwich, please?
B On white or wheat bread?
2 A Could you mail this letter for me, please?
B Yes, of course. No problem.
3 A Can you give me your email address?
B I think you have it already.
4 A Can I talk to you for a second?
B Can it wait? I'm a little busy.
5 A Could you lend me 20 dollars until tomorrow?
B I can lend you ten, but not twenty.
6 A Can you give me a hand with this box?
B Of course. Do you want it upstairs?

UNIT 6

CD2 21 Guy Laliberté – Entrepreneur, Billionaire, Space Explorer

A The Man

Guy Laliberté is the founder and owner of Cirque du Soleil, the famous international performance group. He lives in Montreal, Canada, but he has many homes around the world. He also has an island and a boat. Guy is one of the richest people in Canada. He earns millions of dollars every year. He gives a lot of money to charity.

CD2 22 see p. 42

CD2 23

played traveled joined published returned planned moved earned

CD2 24

C His Success

When Guy was 18, he moved to Europe. He didn't have a lot of money, so on his first night in London he stayed on a park bench. Guy earned a little money by performing on the streets. He played instruments and juggled, and he learned to eat fire and walk on stilts! Soon he joined a group of performers. They traveled around Europe doing street shows. But he didn't earn much money. So did he give up? No!

Guy returned to Quebec. There, he planned some street parties and festivals. In 1984, his troupe received $1.2 million from the Quebec government to present a street show for a national celebration. The show, called Cirque du Soleil, was a success. Guy and his troupe organized more shows, and soon Cirque du Soleil was a huge hit. Now, it performs shows all over the world. Millions of people love the show's acrobats, its color, and its creativity. Laliberté is now a billionaire thanks to Cirque du Soleil.

His charity work

Laliberté started the *One Drop Foundation* in 2007. The foundation helps people all over the world have access to clean water. In 2009, Guy was the first Canadian private space explorer. From space, he took photos of the earth, especially of water. In June 2011, Laliberté published *Gaia*, a book that included these photos of the earth. Money from the sales of his book go to the *One Drop Foundation*. Laliberté is a man who makes a true difference in the world!

CD2 25

1 Where did his father work?
At an aluminum factory.
2 What did his mother do?
She was a nurse.
3 What instruments did Guy play in high school?
Harmonica and accordion.
4 Where did he move when he was 18?
Europe.
5 Who did he travel with around Europe?
A group of performers.
6 What did his troupe present in 1984?
Cirque du Soleil.
7 Where did he travel to in 2009?
To space.
8 When did he publish a book?
In 2011.

CD2 26 see p. 44

CD2 27

cleaned received studied wanted moved talked watched interviewed opened decided

CD2 28 Interview with Ben Way

I = Interviewer, B = Ben Way

I Hi Ben. Nice to meet you. Can you tell us a bit about your life?
B Well, I was born on September 28th, 1980 in Devon in the southwest of England.
I And what did your parents do?
B My dad was an accountant and my mum was an artist.
I Did you go to school in Devon?
B Yes, I did. I went to a small village school.
I Did you enjoy school?
B No, I didn't enjoy it at all. I had problems because I was dyslexic and couldn't read and write ...
I Ah, that's difficult ...
B Yes, but when I was nine, my dad gave me a computer and it changed my life. I loved it, I took it everywhere with me. I helped my friends and my parents' friends with their computers.
I Very good – and then ...?
B Then, I wrote my first software program when I was just 11, and when I was 15, I began my own computer company.
I That's fantastic! Was it successful?
B Yes, very successful – so successful that I left school at 16 and ...
I Yes, I know ... you were a millionaire at 17!
B Yes, I made my first million at 17 and at 19, I had £18.5 million.
I And at 20 you won "Young Entrepreneur of the Year."
B Yes, I did. I often went on TV and radio and talked about it. It was amazing!
I And then one year later ...?
B Yes, and then just a year later, when I was 21, I lost everything. Disaster! Dotcom businesses everywhere went down.
I Yeah, but now you're up again! Another company, another £1 million!
B I know. I work hard but I'm also very lucky!

CD2 29 Regular and irregular verbs

1 My grandad was born in 1932. He died in 2009.
2 My parents met in Los Angeles in 1983. They got married in 1985.
3 I arrived late for the lesson. It began at 2 o'clock.
4 I caught the bus to school today. It took just 40 minutes.
5 I had a very busy morning. I sent 30 emails before 10 o'clock.

6 Our soccer team won the game 3–0. Your team lost again.
7 My brother earned a lot of money at his last job but he left because he didn't like it.
8 I studied Chinese for four years, but when I went to Shanghai, I couldn't understand a word.

CD2 30 A biography

The multimillionaire Ben Way

Ben Way is 35 years old and he runs a company called "Rainmakers." Ben's a computer millionaire. However, he wasn't always so successful. As a child he was dyslexic, so he didn't do well at school. He didn't read or write until he was nine and his father gave him a computer. He wrote his first software program when he was 11. He didn't go to university because at 15 he started his own company. He first became a millionaire when he was just 17. He continued to be very successful until he was 21. He won a business award in 2000, but then in 2001 he lost it all. One year later he started "Rainmakers," and now he's a millionaire again.

CD2 31 The businessman and the fisherman

B = Businessman, F = Fisherman

B Good morning. What beautiful tuna! How long did it take to catch them?
F Oh, about two hours.
B Only two hours! Amazing! Why didn't you fish for longer and catch more?
F I didn't want to fish for longer. With this I have enough fish for my family.
B But what do you do with the rest of your day? Aren't you bored?
F I'm never bored. I get up late, play with my children, watch soccer, and take a nap. Sometimes in the evenings, I walk to the village to see my friends, play the guitar, and sing some songs.
B Really? That's all you do? Look, I am a very successful businessman. I went to an excellent college and I studied business. I can help you. Fish for four hours every day and sell the extra fish you catch …
F But …
B … Then, you can buy a bigger boat, catch more, and earn more money.
F But …
B … Then buy a second boat, a third, and so on, until you have a big fleet of fishing boats.
F But …
B … and you can export the fish, and leave this village, and move to the big city, and open a fishing business.
F OK, OK, but how long will all this take?
B Uh let me think uh, probably about 15 to 20 years.
F 15 to 20 years! And then what, sir?
B Why, that's the exciting part! You can sell your business and become very rich, a millionaire.
F A millionaire? Really? But what do I do with all the money?
B Well, let me think. Uh I know, you can stop work, and uh, move to a beautiful old fishing village where you can sleep late, play with your grandchildren, watch soccer, take a nap, and walk to the village in the evenings where you can play the guitar and sing with your friends all you want.
F Um – well …

Fisherman's children Daddy, Daddy, did you catch many fish?

F I caught enough for us today and tomorrow, and also some for this gentleman. Please, sir, have some of my beautiful fish. Goodbye, sir. Come on children, let's go home.

CD2 32 Describing feelings

1 I went to bed late last night, so I'm very tired today.
2 My soccer team lost again. I'm really annoyed!
3 I won $20,000 in the lottery! I'm so excited!
4 I can't find my house keys. I'm really worried.
5 I have nothing to do and nowhere to go. I am so bored!
6 The professor gave a great lecture. I was really interested.

CD2 33

1 A Did you enjoy the movie?
B No, I didn't. It was boring.
A Oh, I loved it. It was really interesting, and very funny.
B I didn't laugh once!
2 C How was your exam?
D Awful. I'm very worried.
C But you worked really hard.
D I know, I studied until two in the morning, but then I was so tired today, I couldn't read the questions.
C Don't worry. I'm sure you'll be OK.
3 E That was a great game! Really exciting!
F Only because your team won. I was bored.
E But it wasn't boring at all! It was a terrific game!
F Well, I didn't enjoy it, and now I'm annoyed because I paid $45 for my ticket.
4 G When's Nina's birthday?
H You mean "When *was* her birthday?" It was last Friday, March 24th.
G Oh no! Was she annoyed that I forgot?
H No, no, she was just worried that you didn't like her anymore.

CD2 34 see p. 49

CD2 35

1 April first.
2 March second.
3 September seventeenth.
4 November ninth.
5 February 29th, 1976.
6 December nineteenth, 1983.
7 October third, 1999.
8 May 31st, 2005.
9 July 15th, 2015.

CD2 36

1 October 31st.
2 June 23rd.
3 July 15th.
4 March 4th, 2012.
5 February 18th, 2020.
6 September 17th, 1960.

UNIT 7

CD2 37 20th Century Quiz

1 Henry Ford sold the first Model-T in 1908.
2 The first talking movie, *The Jazz Singer*, was in 1927.
3 Einstein published his theory of relativity about 100 years ago.
4 The Russian Revolution was in 1917.
5 The first nonstop flight around the world was about 60 years ago.
6 About 60 million people died in the Second World War.
7 The Berlin Wall came down in 1989.
8 People first landed on the moon on July 20, 1969.
9 The Beatles had 20 number 1 hits in the US.
10 The twentieth century ended at midnight on December 31st, 2000.

CD2 38 The good old days

T = Tommy, B = Bill

T Grandpa, when you were a boy did you have television?
B Of course we had television! But it wasn't a color TV like we have now, it was black and white.
T And were there lots and lots of channels? How many TV channels were there?
B Only three. But that was enough! We loved it! And there weren't shows all day long. There was usually nothing on in the morning or the afternoon!
T Oh, no! What time did TV shows start?
B At around 5:00, when children's TV started. There were some great shows for us children, I can tell you! We had real stories in those days!
T Did your mom and dad give you an allowance?
B Yes, but I worked for it! I cleaned the kitchen and did the dishes. We didn't have dishwashers in those days!
T That's terrible! How much allowance did you get?
B My dad gave me six cents a week. He didn't give me much, did he? But we bought comic books and candy.
T What kind of comic books did you buy?
B Well, I bought a comic book called *Pep Comics*, and it was full of adventure stories. And *Superman*! That was really exciting!
T Wow! Did you have vacations?
B Yes, but not like these days. People didn't go abroad. I never took a plane like people do now! It was too expensive!
T Where did you go on vacation?
B To the beach.
T How did you get there?

B My father drove. We had a Ford car, a Ford Coupe it was. We went to the same place every year.
T Why did you go to the same place? Why didn't you go somewhere different?
B Because we all liked it there!
T I'm glad I wasn't alive then! It sounds really boring!
B Oh, no! That's where you're wrong! It was the most fun ever!

CD2 39

1 How many TV channels were there?
2 What time did TV shows start?
3 How much allowance did you get?
4 What kind of comic books did you buy?
5 Where did you go on vacation?
6 How did you get there?
7 Why did you go to the same place?

CD2 40

1 Where did you go?
To the mall.
2 When did you go?
Yesterday.
3 Who did you go with?
A friend from work.
4 How did you get there?
By bus.
5 Why did you go?
Because I wanted to.
6 What did you buy?
A shirt.
7 How many did you buy?
Only one.
8 How much did you pay?
$29.

CD2 41 Listening and pronunciation

1 Where do you want to go?
2 I didn't go to college.
3 Where was he?
4 Do you like it?
5 Why did he come?
6 She doesn't work there.

CD2 42 Angela's life

A = Angela, F = Frank

F You aren't American, are you, Angela? Where are you from?
A No, I'm Argentinian. I was born in Córdoba.
F Is that where you grew up?
A Yes, I lived with my parents and two sisters in a house near the university. My father worked at the university.
F Oh, how interesting! What was his job? Was he a teacher?
A Yes, he was a professor of psychology.
F Really? And what did your mother do?
A She was a doctor. She worked in a hospital.
F So, where did you go to school?
A I went to a small private school. I was there for ten years, then, when I was 18, I went to college.
F What did you study?
A I studied philosophy and education at the college in Buenos Aires. I was there for four years.
F Wow! And did you start work after that?
A No, I traveled in the States for six months. I worked in a summer camp near Yellowstone National Park. It was amazing!
F That sounds great! And what's your job now?
A I work in a junior high school in Brazil. I teach Spanish and English.
F Your English is really good! Well, it was very nice to meet you, Angela!
A Nice to meet you too. Bye!

CD2 43

In 1909 Blériot made the first long flight from Calais to Dover.

Blériot was just 37 years old when he flew across the English Channel. It took him just 37 minutes.
He took off from France at 4:30 in the morning.
He flew his plane at 40 miles per hour.
He flew at 250 feet above the sea.
He won a prize of £1,000.

In 1969 Neil Armstrong became the first person to walk on the moon.

Three astronauts flew in Apollo 11. The rocket took three days to get to the moon.
It circled the moon 30 times.
It landed at 8:17 p.m. on July 20, 1969.
Six hundred million people watched on TV.
Neil Armstrong said, "That's one small step for man, one giant leap for mankind."
The astronauts spent 22 hours on the moon.

CD2 44 Noises in the night

It was about two o'clock in the morning, and … suddenly I woke up. I heard a noise. I got out of bed and went slowly downstairs. There was a light on in the living room. I listened carefully. I could hear two men speaking very quietly. "Robbers!" I thought. Immediately I ran back upstairs and called the police. I was really frightened. Fortunately, the police arrived quickly. They opened the front door and went into the living room. Then they came upstairs to see me. "It's alright now, sir," they explained. "We turned the television off for you!"

CD2 45 Special occasions

1 *Happy birthday to you,*
Happy birthday to you,
Happy birthday, dear Grandma,
Happy birthday to you.
2 A Did you get any Valentine cards?
B Yes, I did. Listen to this.
Roses are red, violets are blue,
You are my Valentine,
And I love you.
A Wow! Do you know who it's from?
B No idea.
3 C You're in 11th grade, right, Laura?
D Actually, I'm in 12th. I'm almost done with school.
C Oh, really? Congratulations! When is your graduation?
D It's next Sunday.
4 E Congratulations! That's great news!
F Thank you very much. We're both very happy.
E So when's the big day?
G Excuse me?
E Your wedding day! When is it?
F December 12th. You'll get an invitation!
5 H It's midnight! Happy New Year, everyone!
I/J/K Happy New Year!
6 L Wake up, Mommy! Happy Mother's Day!
M Thank you, honey. Oh, what beautiful flowers! And a cup of coffee! Well, aren't I lucky!
L And we made you a card! Look!
M It's beautiful! What creative children you are!
7 N Thank goodness it's Friday!
O Yeah! Have a good weekend!
N You too.

UNIT 8

CD2 46 see p. 58

CD2 47 Who's a picky eater?

E = Evan, N = Nick

N Oh, good, we have some tomatoes.
E Sorry, Nick. I don't like them.
N Come on, Evan! Tomatoes are good for you. I didn't like them much when I was a child, but I love them now.
E Hmm – I didn't like a lot of things when I was a kid.
N Oh – you were a picky eater! What didn't you like?
E I didn't like any green vegetables.
N Did you like any vegetables at all?
E Only potatoes. I loved French fries.
N What about fruit? Did you like fruit?
E I liked some fruit, but not all. I didn't like bananas. I liked fruit juice. I drank a lot of apple juice.
N And now you drink a lot of coffee!
E Yeah – and tea. But I didn't like coffee or tea when I was a kid.
N So what were your favorite foods?
E I liked ice cream, chocolate, chips, cookies, especially chocolate cookies. -uh- you know, I liked all the usual things kids like.
N All the unhealthy things!
E I liked pasta too. Pasta with tomato sauce. I love that!
N Tomato sauce!? But you don't like tomatoes.
E Tomato sauce is different. Hey, let's not eat in tonight. Let's go out to Romano's.
N Romano's – a great idea! It's my favorite Italian restaurant.

CD2 48 see p. 59

CD2 49

1 A Excuse me, are you ready to order?
B Yes. I'd like a steak, please.
2 A Would you like a sandwich?
B No, thanks. I'm not hungry.
3 A Do you like Liz?
B Yes. She's very nice.
4 A Would you like a cold drink?
B Yes, please. Do you have any apple juice?
5 A Can I help you?
B Yes. I'd like some stamps, please.
6 A What sports do you do?
B Well, I like skiing very much.

CD2 50

1 What kind of coffee do you like?
2 Would you like a turkey and cheese sandwich?
3 Who's your favorite author?
4 What do you want for your birthday?
5 Do you have any pets?
6 Do you want some ice cream for dessert?

CD2 51

1 A What kind of coffee do you like?
B I like dark roast coffee.
2 A Would you like a turkey and cheese sandwich?
B Just turkey, please. I don't like cheese.
3 A Who's your favorite author?
B I like books by Patricia Cornwell.
4 A What do you want for your birthday?
B I'd like a new computer.
5 A Do you have any pets?
B No, but I'd like a dog.
6 A Do you want some ice cream for dessert?
B No, thanks. I don't like ice cream.

CD2 52 Eating in

N = Nick, E = Evan

N This recipe for shepherd's pie looks easy.
E But I can't cook at all.
N Don't worry. I really like cooking. Now, vegetables – do we have any onions? Are there any carrots or potatoes?
E Well, there are some onions, but there aren't any carrots, and we don't have many potatoes. How many do we need?
N Four big ones.
E OK, put potatoes on your list.
N And how many tomatoes are there?
E Only two small ones. Put them on the list too.
N How much milk is there?
E There's a lot, but there isn't much cheese or butter.
N OK, cheese and butter. What about herbs? Do we have any thyme?
E Yeah, we do. But don't forget the ground beef. How much do we need?
N A pound and a half. Now, is that everything?
E Uh, I think so. Do we have vegetable oil? Oh, yeah, there's some left in the bottle.
N OK, first shopping, then I'll give you a cooking lesson!
E Great! I hope Sarah and Lizzie like shepherd's pie.
N Everyone likes shepherd's pie!

CD2 53 *much* or *many*?

1 A How much toast would you like?
B Just one slice, please.
2 A How much yogurt do we have left?
B Not a lot. Just a little strawberry.
3 A How many people were at the wedding?
B About 150.
4 A How much money do you have in your pocket?
B Just fifty cents.
5 A How much gas is there in the car?
B It's full.
6 A How many children does your brother have?
B Two. A boy and a girl.
7 A How many days is it until your birthday?
B It's tomorrow!
8 A How much time do you need for this exercise?
B Two more minutes.

CD2 54 What's your favorite sandwich?

Linh
I come from Vietnam. Our national sandwich is Bánh Mi. It's a baguette filled with meat and vegetables. My favorite kind of Bánh Mi is made with grilled chicken. Mmmm, delicious. Would you like to try one?

Larissa
I'm from Brazil, so for me it's the Bauru. It's named after the Brazilian city of Bauru, and it's really popular here in Brazil. It has melted cheese – usually mozzarella – and slices of roast beef and tomatoes. I love it!

Dylan
I live in Philadelphia, here in the US. Philadelphia is famous for the cheese steak sandwich. It's the best sandwich in the world! It's made with thin slices of steak with melted cheese and grilled onions on top. I love it!

Kumiko
Oh, the best sandwich in the world is definitely Yakisoba-pan. It's a hot dog bun filled with fried Japanese noodles. I usually have an egg and some mayonnaise on top. And it's delicious with a little salt and pepper – mm, I'd like one right now!

John
I was in Turkey by the sea, and a fisherman called to me, "Come, try a 'Balik Ekmek'." I think this means "fish in bread." He gave me a sandwich – it was fresh grilled mackerel in a bread roll with raw onions. Amazing!

CD2 55 Daily needs

aspirin
chocolate
light bulb
flowers
adaptor
envelopes
Band-Aids
phone case
toothpaste
shampoo
batteries
screwdriver
magazine
newspaper

CD2 56 Shopping on Main Street

1 A I'd like some flowers, please. How much are the roses?
B They're $36 a dozen.
A Oh, that's too much. I can't spend that much.
B Well, how about some tulips? They're only $15 a dozen.
A That's much better. I'll take a dozen.

2 C Can I help you find something?
D Yes, I need a light bulb.
C What kind do you need?
D A 13 watt mini bulb.
C OK. Let's see… here's a pack of six.
D Thanks. But that's too many… I just need one.
C Oh, sorry, we don't sell them individually. Not enough people want to buy only one.

3 E Do you have any cases for this phone?
F Let me see… yes, here's one. It's very popular.
E Thanks. Uh, actually it's too big.
F Oh, sorry. I can order a small one for you.
E Uh, no thanks.
F OK. Anything else?
E That's all, thanks.

CD2 57 see p. 65

CD2 58 Sounding polite

A Hi! What can I get you?
B I'd like a latte, please.
A Sure. For here or to go?
B For here.
A And what size do you want? Small, medium, or large?
B Large, please.
A Would you like anything to eat? A croissant? A bagel?
B I'd like a bagel, please. Toasted.
A No problem.
B Can I have some butter with the bagel?
A Sure. Have a seat, and I'll bring it over.

UNIT 9

CD3 2 City living

1 This city is in the northeastern part of the country. It's very big, and very old. It's very near the ocean, and it's also on the Hudson River.

2 This city is in the northern central part of the country. It's about 400 kilometers from the ocean, and it's on the River Seine. It's one of the most popular tourist destinations in the world.

CD3 3 see p. 66

CD3 4

1 The Empire State Building is taller than the Eiffel Tower.
2 The Métro is more expensive than the New York City Subway.
3 Paris has warmer winters than New York.
4 Paris is rainier than New York.
5 I think the buildings in Paris are more beautiful.
6 I think the parks in Paris are nicer.

CD3 5

Well, I like both New York and Paris. But they're very different cities. Take public transportation for example. The New York City Subway is cheaper than the Métro, but they're both easy to use. And the weather … well, New York has colder winters than Paris. Paris is rainier than New York, but New York has bigger storms. What about the buildings? Well, … the architecture in Paris is definitely more beautiful, but the buildings in New York are more modern. And living in the two cities? Well … life is faster in New York. And the people? … Mmm, people in New York work harder, and they make more money. In Paris, having a good time is more important.

CD3 6 Comparing cities

1 A Dubai is older than Rio de Janeiro.
B No, it isn't! Dubai is much more modern!

2 A Tokyo is cheaper than Bangkok.
B No, it isn't! Tokyo's much more expensive!

3 A Seoul is bigger than Beijing.
B No, it isn't! Seoul is much smaller!

4 A Miami is safer than Los Angeles.
B No, it isn't! It's much more dangerous!

5 A Taxi drivers in New York are better than taxi drivers in London.
B No, they aren't! They're much worse!

CD3 7 Chelsea

- It's the best place in the city to have lunch.
- It's New York's biggest and most popular food market.
- The market is busiest on weekends.
- The food is amazing.
- It's New York's newest and most unique park.
- It's one of TV's best cooking shows.

CD3 8 Parisian in New York

I = Interviewer, C = Chantal

I Hello Chantal!
C Hi!
I Now, you're French, but you live in New York. Is that right?
C Yes, that's right.
I And are you … on your own here in New York?
C No, no! I'm here with my husband, André.
I Oh, I see. Do you work in New York?
C Yes, I do. I work in a bank. I really like my job.
I Oh that's good. And …Where do you live in New York?
C Well, we're renting an apartment in Chelsea. It's probably the smallest apartment in the city! But we love the neighborhood.
I Yes, Chelsea's a fun neighborhood. So, what does your husband do?
C He has a cheese shop in Chelsea Market… he sells French cheese. I think it's the most delicious food at the market!
I Wow, that's great! And tell me, do you have a car here?
C No, I don't. The subway is the easiest way to get around New York.
I OK! Thank you very much! I hope you enjoy your time here!

CD3 9 It's the biggest!

1 The tallest building in New York is One World Trade Center. It's 1,776 feet (541 meters).
2 The most expensive hotel is the St. Regis. It costs more than $800 a night!
3 The biggest park in New York is Central Park. It's 843 acres.
4 The most popular tourist attraction is Times Square. It has 39,000,000 visitors a year.
5 The most famous building is the Empire State Building. Everyone knows it.
6 The best restaurant for spotting celebrities is *Nobu*. They all go there.

CD3 10

A megacity is a city with more than ten million inhabitants.
The largest megacity is Tokyo. The next biggest is Delhi. Third is Mexico City. Fourth is New York, with about 20 million. Fifth is Shanghai. And last, the smallest is Mumbai, which has about 19.7 million.
Some time in 2008, for the first time in the history of the world, more people on Earth lived in cities than in rural areas.

CD3 11

Makiko from Tokyo
The first thing to say about Tokyo is that it is very safe. Women can walk everywhere anytime day or night. Little children walk to school. You can leave something on the table in a restaurant while you go out for a minute and nobody will take it.

Tokyo is also very clean, and it is very easy to travel around. All the trains and buses run on time.

Personally, my favorite time of year is spring, when it's dry and the cherry blossoms are on the trees.

Tokyo is a very exciting city, because there are always new things to do, new places to go, new things to eat. It changes very quickly!

Vimahl from Mumbai
I have two strong impressions of Mumbai. First, it is a city that is so full of activity! It is busy, busy, busy all day long and all night long! It's a city that doesn't sleep much. The day begins early because it is so hot. It's a noisy place. There are cars going beep, beep, auto rickshaws by the thousands, fast trains rushing past, vendors shouting and trying to get you to buy their food, their drinks, their clothes. And people, people everywhere trying to get to work.

The second thing to say is that the people are very, very enthusiastic. Life isn't easy in Mumbai for a lot of people, but we really work hard and we really want to do our best. Every new day brings new possibilities! The future is exciting for us!

Lourdes from Mexico City
There are three things I like about living in Mexico City. First, the weather. It is warm and sunny most of the year. The second is the fresh fruit and vegetables – the markets are wonderful, the colors and smells are great! And the third is that I'm never bored because there is so much to see and do! We have museums, theaters, art exhibitions, parks, restaurants … everything!

My favorite time of year in Mexico City is the end of December, from the 16th to the 31st. The city is full of lights, there are parties everywhere, and we eat and drink and give presents. Everyone's really happy! I love it!

CD3 12 Directions

Go along Spring Street, past the Fairview Hotel on your left, and over the bridge. At the traffic circle, turn left and go up Park Avenue. Go around the corner, through the woods, and down the hill. Then go under the railroad bridge and you are on Route 312 to Westfield.

CD3 13

1 Go along Spring Street, past the hotel, and over the Deep River. Go straight through the traffic circle, and it's in front of you on the hill to your left.
2 Go straight past the hotel and over the bridge until you get to a traffic circle. At the traffic circle, follow signs to the town center. Go past a gas station on your left, over a crosswalk, and at the traffic lights turn right. You're on …
3 Go over the bridge, over the Deep River, and turn right toward the town center. Go straight, through the traffic lights. When you are in the square, it's on the left-hand side, next to the museum, across from the Town Hall.

UNIT 10

CD3 14

1 "I'm cooking."
2 "I'm reading the paper."
3 "I'm watching the soccer game."
4 "I'm working on my laptop."

CD3 15 I'm sitting on the train

1 T = Tony, N = Nina
T Hello?
N Hi, Tony! It's Nina. Where are you?
T We're on the train. We're going to Washington, DC for the weekend.
N Oh, great! How's the trip going?
T Fine. I'm reading the paper, and Alice is doing something on her laptop …

2 K = Kate, P = Pete
K Hello?
P Kate, hi! It's Pete. How are you? What are you doing?
K Fine. We're at home. I'm just cooking some dinner.
P What's Tim doing?
K He's watching the soccer game. Can't you hear?
P Oh, right!

CD3 16

1 What's Tony doing?
He's reading the paper.
2 What's Alice doing?
She's doing something on her laptop.
3 Where are Tony and Alice going?
They're going to Washington DC.
4 What's Kate cooking?
She's cooking dinner.
5 What's Tim watching?
He's watching the soccer game.

CD3 17

B = Beth, D = Daniel
B Oh, hi Daniel! You OK?
D Yeah, I'm good. So, where are you?
B Oh, I'm … at Ellie's house. We're sitting in her bedroom.
D Oh, OK. And what are you doing at Ellie's house?
B We're umm … doing some work on our laptops.
D Oh, right. Is it school work?
B Yeah, I'm doing my homework.
D Who's that shouting?
B That's … Ellie's sister. We're taking care of her.
D Hm. Really! OK. Well, see you later. Bye!
B I'll be home about 6:00, Daniel. Bye!

CD3 18

1 Alice is sleeping.
2 Alice and Tony are going to Atlanta.
3 Kate's cooking lunch.
4 Tim's watching a movie.
5 Beth's doing her homework.
6 Beth and Ellie are sitting in Ellie's bedroom.

CD3 19 Who's who?

A Oh, no! I don't know anybody. Who are they all?
B Don't worry. They're all very nice, I'll tell you who everybody is. Can you see that man over there?
A The man near the window?
B Yes. That's Paul. He's talking to Sophie. He's a banker. Very rich. And very funny. He works in New York City.
A Wow! So he's Paul. OK. And that's Sophie next to him?
B Yes. She's laughing at Paul's jokes. She's really nice. She's a professor at New York University. She teaches business studies.
A And who's that woman on the left?
B That's Helena. She's drinking orange juice. She's a writer. She writes stories for children. They're excellent. A very nice woman.
A And who's that man she's talking to?
B Helena's talking to Roger. Roger's eating chips. He's an interesting man. He's an art dealer. He works for the Museum of Modern Art.
A Really? Wow! What a job! So that's Paul and Sophie … Helena and Roger … Now there are two more. Who are they?
B They're Sam and Annie. They're looking at photos on Sam's phone.
A And what do they do?
B They're designers. They make clothes for children.
A OK. So that's everybody. Thanks.
B No problem.

CD3 20 Everything was too expensive!

1 **A** Did you buy anything for yourself at the mall?
B No. Nothing.
A Why not?
B Everything was too expensive.
A Oh, that's too bad.
B But I bought something for you. Happy Birthday!

2 **C** Did you talk to anybody at the party?
D No. Nobody.
C Why not?
D Everybody was dancing and the music was really loud!
C Oh!
D But I danced with somebody nice – a woman named Kate.

3 **E** Did you go anywhere on Saturday night?
F No. Nowhere.
E Why not?
F Everywhere was closed. There wasn't one place open.
E That's incredible!
F So next weekend I'm going somewhere more interesting.

CD3 21 An interview with an astronaut

I = Interviewer, S = Soichi

I Soichi, what exactly is your job?
S I'm an aeronautical engineer, and I'm a JAXA astronaut.
I What is JAXA?
S JAXA is the Japan Aerospace Exploration Agency.
I What did you study in college?
S Well, I studied engineering, of course! Aeronautical engineering.
I Where did you study? What college?
S I studied at the University of Tokyo, and I graduated in 1991.
I What part of Japan are you from?
S I'm from Yokohama, Kanagawa, which is part of Tokyo.
I Are you married?
S Yes. I have three children.
I What do you like doing when you're on Earth?
S Well, I guess my hobbies are jogging and basketball. And I like skiing and camping with my kids.
I What are you doing on the space station right now?
S I'm doing quite a few space walks. I'm going out into space, and I'm checking the instruments on the outside of the space station to make sure they're working properly.
I You're part of the Russian crew. What does that mean?
S It means that my commander is Oleg Kotov, from Roscosmos, and I'm working on his team. We're studying weather conditions in space, and we're doing experiments with plants to see how they grow in zero gravity.
I What do you do when you aren't working?
S Well, I spend a lot of time just looking down at you on Earth! And I think how lucky I am to be here. And I wish that everyone could see Earth from space. Maybe people would stop fighting if they could see how beautiful our planet is.

CD3 22 Who is it?

1 She has dark brown hair and she's very pretty. She's wearing boots, and a hat, and a red scarf, and she's jumping in the air. She looks really happy!
2 He has short dark hair. He's wearing sneakers, and a purple T-shirt, and he's carrying a ball. He isn't very tall.
3 She's wearing a scarf. She's pretty, and she has long, blond hair, and blue eyes. She isn't smiling. She doesn't look very friendly.
4 He doesn't look very happy. Maybe he's a businessman. He's wearing a white shirt and a striped tie. He's also wearing glasses.

CD3 23 Social expressions

1 **A** Patrick and I are getting married.
B Wow! That's fantastic! Congratulations!
A Thanks. We're both very excited. And a little nervous.

2 **C** Can I help you?
D No, I'm just looking, thanks.
C Just tell me if you need anything.
D OK, thanks very much.

3 **E** I'm afraid you need a new cylinder.
F Sorry, what does that mean?
E Well, it means you should probably get a new car. This is a very expensive problem to fix.

4 **G** We're going to the movies tonight.
H Oh, nice. Well, I hope you like the movie!
G Thanks. I'll tell you all about it.
H Great!

5 **I** Excuse me! This machine isn't working.
J I'm sorry. Let me have a look. Oh! It isn't turned on. That's why!
I Oh, great! Thank you very much.
J No problem.

6 **K** Hi. Can I speak to Dave, please?
L I'm afraid he isn't here right now. Can I take a message?
K Yes. Could you ask him to call Kevin?
L Sure. I'll do that.

7 **M** Thanks for the invitation to your party, but I'm afraid I can't come.
N Oh, that's too bad. We'll miss you.
M I'm going away that weekend.
N That's OK. Another time.

8 **O/P** Bye! Have a safe trip!
Q/R Thanks. We'll see you in a couple of days!
O/P I hope you have a good time.
Q/R We'll try.

UNIT 11

CD3 24 Planning my future

1 When I get home, I'm going to relax with my wife.
2 When I grow up, I'm going to be a race-car driver.
3 When the kids are in bed, I'm going to sit down and have a cup of tea.
4 When I get a raise, I'm going to buy my girlfriend a ring.
5 When I arrive on Koh Samui Island, I'm going to lie on the beach.
6 When I retire, I'm going to learn to play golf.
7 When this class ends, I'm going to meet my friends in the park.

CD3 25 see p. 83

CD3 26

1 When I get home, I'm going to relax with my wife. I'm not going to talk about work.
2 When I grow up, I'm going to be a race-car driver. I'm not going to work in an office like my dad.
3 When the kids are in bed, I'm going to sit down and have a cup of tea. I'm not going to do the laundry.
4 When I get a raise, I'm going to buy my girlfriend a ring. I'm not going to buy a new car.
5 When I arrive on Koh Samui Island, I'm going to lie on the beach. I'm not going to check emails all week.
6 When I retire, I'm going to learn to play golf. I'm not going to stay at home and do nothing.
7 When this class ends, I'm going to meet my friends in the park. I'm not going to do my homework.

CD3 27 Careful! You're going to drop it!

1 It's going to rain. He can't play tennis. That's too bad.
2 Look at the time. He's going to be late for his meeting.
3 Come on! Come on! She's going to win. Great!
4 Oh no! Jack's on top of the wall! He's going to fall.
5 Careful! She's going to drop the vase. Too late!
6 He's going to sneeze. "Aaattishooo!" "Bless you!"

CD3 28 see p. 85

CD3 29

R = Rob, F = Friend, B = Becky

R First we're going to Egypt.
F Why? To see the pyramids?
B Well, yes, but also we want to take a cruise down the Nile River.
F Great! Where are you going after that?
R Well, then we're going to Tanzania to …
F Wow! You're going to climb Kilimanjaro.
R Yes, and then we're flying to India.
F Are you going to visit the Taj Mahal?
B Of course, but we're also going on a tiger safari.
F You're going to see tigers!
R Well, we hope so. Then we're going to Cambodia to visit the floating villages in Lake Tonlé Sap and …
B … then to Australia to see Ayers Rock. We want to take photos of it at sunset. Did you know it turns from pink to purple at sunset?
F Really! And are you going to Sydney?
R Oh, yes, we're taking a flight from Sydney to Antarctica.
B Yeah, it's a day trip to fly over the coldest place on Earth.
F I can't believe this. How many more places?
R Two. We're flying from Sydney to Peru to …
F … to visit Machu Picchu of course.
R Yes, and then from Peru back to the US to Yellowstone Park to see the supervolcano and maybe some grizzly bears.
B Then home!
F Amazing! What a trip! How long is it going to take?
R Nine months to a year – we think.

CD3 30 Describing a vacation

1 **A** Where are they going?
B To Brazil.
2 **A** When are they going?
B On October 15.
3 **A** How are they traveling?
B By plane and rental car.
4 **A** How long are they staying?
B For ten days.
5 **A** Where are they staying?
B In a house in a village.
6 **A** What are they going to do?
B They're going to swim, go shopping in the markets, read and relax, and eat in good restaurants.

CD3 31 What's the weather like?

News anchor: Here's Kristin with the weather for the United States and Mexico for the next 24 hours.
Kristin: Hello there. Here's the forecast for Mexico and the United States today. Right now there's some wet and windy weather over the Midwest states, and this is going to move east over the New England states. Temperatures in Boston and New York are now about 68°, but it's cooler in Chicago, 65°, and even cooler in Minneapolis, 60°. To the south it's a little warmer, in St. Louis, 70°, but to the west cool and cloudy in Denver, where it's a welcome 59° after all that extreme summer heat. Moving south it's getting warmer, 75° in Dallas. It's going to be cloudy and showery across much of the northwest, with heavy rain in Seattle and a temperature of 70°. Southern California is going to be warm and dry. In the southeast, it will be hot and stormy, 82° in Atlanta and even warmer in Miami, with temperatures up to 90°. It's going to be sunny all over Mexico, with a high of 75° in Mexico City, 87° in Guadalajara, and 93° in Cancun.

And that's your weather for today. I'll be back at lunchtime with an update.
News anchor: Thank you Kristin, and now…

CD3 32 see p. 88

CD3 33

A What's the weather like today?
B It's cool and cloudy.
A What was it like yesterday?
B Oh, it was wet and windy.
A And what's it going to be like tomorrow?
B I think it's going to be warm and sunny.

CD3 34 Making suggestions

1 **A** What a beautiful day!
B Yeah! It's really warm and sunny. What should we do?
A Let's go for a walk!
2 **A** What an awful day! It's raining again.
B I know. It's so cold and wet! What should we do?
A Let's stay in and watch a movie.

CD3 35 What should we do?

1 **A** What a beautiful day!
B Yeah! It's really warm and sunny. What should we do?
A Let's go for a walk!
B Oh no! It's too hot to walk.
A OK, let's go to the beach.
B Good idea! Why don't we take a picnic?
2 **A** What an awful day! It's raining again.
B I know. It's so cold and wet! What should we do?
A Let's stay in and watch a movie.
B Oh no, that's boring! We did that last night.
A OK then, should we go out for a coffee?
B Great! I'll get my coat and an umbrella!

UNIT 12

CD3 36 Been there! Done that!

K = Kyle, L = Lara

K Hi Lara! Are you and Mel ready for your trip?
L Yeah, almost. We leave next Monday for Hong Kong.
K Ah, Hong Kong, I've been to Hong Kong many times.
L Well, I've never been there. It's my first time in Asia.
K Really? What about your friend, Mel?
L She's been to Tokyo and Taipei, but she hasn't been to Hong Kong.
K Ah, Tokyo and Taipei. I've been there, too. I studied in Tokyo for a year before I went to work in Toronto. Have you ever been to Canada?
L No, I haven't, I haven't traveled much at all, so I'm really excited.
K Oh, I've been to Asia, North *and* South America so many times, and I've …
L I'm sure you have, Kyle. Oh no, look at the time! Mel's waiting for me. We have so much to do. Bye Kyle, we'll send you a postcard.

CD3 37 see p. 90

CD1 38

A Have you ever been to Chile?
B No, I haven't.
A Have you ever been to Brazil?
B Yes, I have.
A When did you go?
B Two years ago.
A Where did you go?
B Rio, Salvador, and Recife.
A Wow! Did you have a good time?
B Yes, I did. It was great!

CD3 39 Getting ready to go!

L = Lara, M = Mel

L Where's the list?
M I have it. OK, let's check it. Umm we've bought new backpacks, we did that a while ago.
L They look pretty big. I hope we can carry them.
M Oh, don't worry. We're strong! I haven't finished packing mine yet. Have you?
L Not yet, just one or two more things to go in. Oh, have you gotten the Hong Kong dollars from the bank?
M Yup. I got five thousand for you and five thousand for me.
L All our savings. I hope it's enough!
M No worries. We can stay with my aunt in Tokyo.
L Have you emailed her yet?
M Yeah, she just emailed back. She's going to meet us at the airport when we fly in to Tokyo from Hong Kong.
L Great. Hey, look, I just checked the weather in Hong Kong for next week. Hot and sunny!
M Yeah, it's going to be so good. We're going to leave winter here and arrive in the middle of summer in Hong Kong.
L What about the tickets?
M I think we only need passports, but I printed our tickets just in case, but I haven't checked in online yet. You can only do that 24 hours before the flight.
L Oh Mel! I am so excited. I can't wait.

CD3 40 Tense review

Lara I'm really excited about my trip to Hong Kong. I haven't traveled much outside Australia before. Just once, two years ago, I went on vacation to New Zealand with my family, but I've never been to Asia or the US. I often travel inside Australia. Last year I flew to Perth to visit my cousin, who lives there. It's a five-hour flight from Sydney, where I live. Australia's a big country! Also, I've been up to Cairns in the north three times. I learned to scuba dive there on the Great Barrier Reef.

We just finished packing, and now we're waiting for the taxi to take us to the airport. I've never flown in a 747 before. It's a long flight. It takes nine hours to get to Hong Kong. I'm going to watch movies all the way. I can't wait!

CD3 41 No, not yet!

1 A Have you checked your emails yet?
B Yes, I just checked them, but there wasn't one from you.
2 A Have you done the shopping?
B No, I haven't. I'm too tired to go out.
3 A Have you washed your hair?
B Yes, I just washed it.
4 A Have you cleaned the car yet?
B Yes, I just cleaned your car and mine!
5 A Mom, have you made dinner yet?
B Yes, dinner's ready. Go and wash your hands.
6 A Have you done the dishes yet?
B No. I did them last night. It's your turn!
7 A Have you met the new student yet?
B Yes, I have. I met her on the way to school this morning.
8 A Have you finished this exercise?
B Yes, I just finished it. Thank goodness!

CD3 42 Song: Turin Brakes – *They can't buy the sunshine*

CD3 43

1 Elsa from New York

OK, I've been to Glastonbury twice now. My highlights this year were: the weather — it was sunny and beautiful every day, and the food van with the best sausages and fries ever. However, I was very disappointed with the music on Saturday night. DJs played House music all night. I love House, but this was awful. I got really bored, so I went back to my tent to hang out with friends!

2 Daniel Evans from Wales

Last Wednesday at 2:30 in the afternoon, I decided that I wanted to go to Glastonbury. I was lucky! I found a ticket online. I'm so glad I went. The music was really great. Sometimes it took a long time to get to the stages. The lines were long, but people were always friendly. In the busy "real world" it's difficult to have good conversations with people. At Glastonbury you can do this. It's a great festival, with a great crowd of people. What more could you want? 100,000 friendly people. I wish the rest of life was the same! Four days out of 365 is a good start!

CD3 44 *Take* and *get*

1 A It's really hot in here.
B Why don't you take off your sweater?
2 A Is your office near where you live?
B No, it takes a long time to get to work.
3 A What are your co-workers like?
B Great! We all get along really well.
4 A How often are there exhibitions in the museum?
B They take place regularly, every two months.
5 A Do you like learning English?
B It's OK, but sometimes I get really bored!

CD3 45

1 I usually take a coffee break at around 10:00 in the morning.
2 How long does it take if you go by train?
3 Could you please take a picture of us?
4 Sue has taken her driving test three times, and she's failed every time.
5 Are you still getting ready? We're going to be so late!
6 The doctor told me to take it easy if I want to get better soon.
7 It rained on the day we got married. We got very wet, but still had a great day.
8 You can't get on the bus with that big dog. Please, get off!

CD3 46 Travel announcements

1 The 1:35 for San Diego stopping at San Luis Obispo, Santa Barbara, and Los Angeles is now ready to board on Track 2. There is a dining car on this train. Please make sure that you have all your luggage with you.
2 This is the number 22 for Springfield. Next stop Greenfield. Stand back from the doors, please.
3 Flight BA1536 to New York is now ready for boarding at Gate 58. Will passengers in rows 12 to 20 please board first. Passengers are reminded to keep their carry-on bags with them at all times.

CD3 47

Conversation 1

A Next, please!
B A round trip to Washington, DC, please.
A That's $85.00.
B Thank you. What time does the next train leave?
A At 9:55. The track number just went up on the departures board.
B Oh, yes. I see it. Thank you very much.
A Have a good trip!

Conversation 2

A Excuse me, does the number 24 go to the Natural History Museum?
B No, it doesn't. You need the 360.
A Where can I get it?
B At that bus stop over there.
A Oh, thanks for your help.
B No problem.

CD3 48

A = Assistant, L = Lara, M = Mel

A Have you checked in online?
M Yes, we have.
A Fine. How many suitcases do you have?
L We don't have suitcases, just backpacks.
A Oh, OK. Can you put them on the scales?
M Here you are …
A They're fine. And how many carry-on bags?
L Just these bags.
A They're fine, too. You board from Gate 9 at 10:20.
L Where do we go now?
A To the departure gate and security check. They're over there. Have a nice flight!
M Thanks very much. Goodbye.

CD3 49 **see p. 113**

Grammar Reference

UNIT 1

1.1 Verb *to be*

Affirmative

I	'm	from Chicago.	I'm = I am
He She It	's		He's = He is She's = She is It's = It is
We You They	're		We're = We are You're = You are They're = They are

Negative

I	'm not	from Brazil.	I'm not = I am not NOT ~~I amn't~~
He She It	isn't	married?	He isn't = He is not She isn't = She is not It isn't = It is not
We You They	aren't		We aren't = We are not You aren't = You are not They aren't = They are not

Questions with question words **Answers**

What	's your name? 's her last name? 's his phone number?	Alicia. Johnson. 401-555-3421	What's = What is
Where	are you from? 's she from?	Toronto.	Where's = Where is
Who	's Lara? 's she?	She's my sister.	Who's = Who is
How How old	are you?	Fine, thanks. I'm 22.	NOT ~~I have 22 years.~~

***Yes/No* questions** **Short answers**

Is	he she it	nice?	Yes, he is. NOT ~~Yes, he's.~~ No, she isn't. Yes, it is. NOT ~~Yes, it's.~~
Are	you	married?	Yes, I am./No, I'm not. Yes, we are./No, we aren't.
	they		Yes, they are./No, they aren't.

1.2 Possessive adjectives

What's	my your his her its	name?
This is	our your their	house.

1.3 Possessive 's

my wife's name = her name = the name of my wife
Andy's dictionary = his dictionary
my parents' house = their house

Prepositions

Where are you **from**?

I live **with** my parents.
My brother's **at** work/school.
We live **in** Boston.

I go **to** school **by** bus.
My school is **near** a park.

Here are some photos **of** me.
There are a lot **of** coffee shops.

UNIT 2

2.1 Simple Present *he/she/it*

1 The Simple Present expresses a fact which is always true, or true for a long time.
He **comes** from New Zealand. She **works** in the mountains.

2 The Simple Present also expresses a habit or a routine.
He **often goes** to the gym. She **walks** her dog every day.

Affirmative

He She It	lives	in Argentina.

Negative

He She It	doesn't live	in Korea.

doesn't = does not

Question

Where	does	he she it	live?

***Yes/No* questions**

Does	he she it	live	in the US? in Hong Kong?

Short answers

Yes, he does.
No, she doesn't.
Yes, it does.

2.2 Spelling of the third person singular

1 Most verbs add *-s* in the third person singular.
wear → wears speak → speaks live → lives
But *go* and *do* are different. They add *-es*.
go → goes do → does

2 If the verb ends in *-s*, *-sh*, or *-ch*, add *-es*.
finish → finishes watch → watches

3 If the verb ends in a consonant + *-y*, the *-y* changes to *-ies*.
fly → flies study → studies
But if the verb ends in a vowel + *-y*, the *-y* does not change.
play → plays

4 *Have* is irregular.
have → has

2.3 Pronouns

1 Subject pronouns come before the verb.
He likes them. **I** love him. **She** wants it.

2 Object pronouns come after the verb.
He likes **them**. I love **him**. She wants **it**.

Prepositions

He works **for** a big company.
He works **on** an oil rig.
She earns **about** $75,000 a year.

He works all **over** the world.
He plays music **for** his friends.
There's a good movie **on** TV tonight.

It's just **after** six o'clock.

UNIT 3

3.1 Simple Present

Affirmative

I We You They	live	in New York.
He She It	lives	

Negative

I We You They	don't	live	in New York.
He She It	doesn't		

Question

Where	do	I you we they	live?
	does	he she it	

***Yes/No* questions**

Do	you	like	playing cards?
	they		
Does	he she	go	out on Sunday?

Short answers

Yes, I do./No, I don't.
Yes, we do./No, we don't.

Yes, they do./No, they don't.

Yes, he does./No, he doesn't.
Yes, she does./No, she doesn't.

3.2 Adverbs of frequency

0%		50%		100%
never	sometimes	often	usually	always

1 These adverbs usually come before the main verb.
She **never** goes out on Sundays.
I **sometimes** work late.
I **often** eat in a restaurant.
I **usually** go to bed at about 11:00.
We **always** stop work at 6:00.

They come after the verb *to be*.
She's **always** late.
I'm **never** hungry in the morning.

2 *Sometimes* and *usually* can also come at the beginning or the end of a sentence.
Sometimes we go out. We go out **sometimes**.
Usually I walk to school. I walk to school **usually**.

3 *Never* and *always* don't come at the beginning or the end of a sentence.
NOT ~~Never I go to the theater.~~
~~Always I have coffee in the morning.~~

3.3 *like/love* + verb + *-ing*

When *like* and *love* are followed by another verb, it is usually the *-ing* form.

I **like** cooking.
She **loves** listening to music.
I don't **like** studying.

Prepositions

From Monday **to** Friday I work **in** a bookstore.
On Saturdays I have another job.

I'm a singer **with** a band.
I start work **at** 6:00.
I work **until** 10:00 **at** night.
I'm **at** home **on** Saturdays.
I stay late **at** work.

On Saturday evenings I sing **in** clubs.
I don't go to bed **until** 4 o'clock **in** the morning.
Do you relax **on** weekends?
We go **to** Thailand or Hawaii.
I go skiing **in** winter.
I listen **to** music.
My yard is full **of** flowers.

UNIT 4

4.1 *There is/are ...*

Affirmative

There	is	a sofa.	(singular)
	are	two bedrooms.	(plural)

Negative

There	isn't	a washing machine.	(singular)
	aren't	any pictures.	(plural)

***Yes/No* questions** **Short answers**

Is	there	a table?	Yes, there is. No, there isn't.
Are		any photos?	Yes, there are. No, there aren't.

4.2 *How many ...?*

How many bathrooms are there?

4.3 *some/any*

Affirmative
There are **some** pictures. *some* + plural noun

Negative
There aren't **any** glasses. *any* + plural noun

Question
Are there **any** books? *any* + plural noun

4.4 *a lot of*

She has **a lot of** clothes.

4.5 *this/that/these/those*

1 We use *this/these* to talk about people/things that are near to us.
I like **this** picture. How much are **these** mugs?

2 We use *that/those* to talk about people/things that aren't near to us.
Can you see **that** man? Who are **those** children outside?

3 We can use *this/that/these/those* without a noun.
This is beautiful. **That**'s horrible.
Can I have **this**? **These** are my favorite.
I don't like **that**. I don't want **those**.

Prepositions

The apartment is **on** Franklin Street.
It's **on** the third floor.
The drugstore is **next to** a café.
There's a store **below** the apartment.
There's a bus stop **outside** the post office.
It's **across from** the park.
My apartment is **near** the town center.
The bench is **under** the tree.

What's **in** your bag?
There's a window **behind** the desk.
There's a fireplace **at** the other end.
This is a picture **of** my sister.

5.1 *can/can't*

Can and *can't* have the same form in all persons.
There is no *do* or *does*.
Can is followed by the infinitive (without *to*).

Affirmative

I He/She/It We/You/They	can	swim.

Negative

I He/She/It We/You/They	can't	dance.

NOT ~~He doesn't can dance.~~

Question

What	can	I he/she/it we/you/they	do?

***Yes/No* questions**

Can	you/she/they/etc.	drive? cook?

Short answers

Yes, she can.
Yes, they can.
No, I can't.

5.2 *was/were*

Was/Were is the past of *am/is/are*.

Affirmative

I He/She/It	was	in Seoul yesterday.
We/You/They	were	in Brazil last year.

Negative

I He/She/It	wasn't	at school yesterday.
We/You/They	weren't	at the party last night.

Question

Where	was	I? he/she/it?
	were	we/you/they?

***Yes/No* questions**

Was	he/she	at work?
Were	you/they	at home?

Short answers

Yes, she was.
No, he wasn't.

Yes, I was./Yes, we were.
No, they weren't.

was born

I was born in 1980. NOT ~~I am born ...~~
She was born in Austin, Texas.

Questions

Where	was	he/she	born?
When	were	we/you/they	

5.3 *could/couldn't*

Could is the past of *can*.
Could and *couldn't* have the same form in all persons.
Could is followed by the infinitive (without *to*).

Affirmative

I He/She/It We/You/They	could	swim.

Negative

I He/She/It We/You/They	couldn't	dance.

NOT ~~He didn't could dance.~~

Question

What	could	I he/she/it we/you/they	do?

***Yes/No* questions**

Could	you/she/they/etc.	drive? cook?

NOT ~~Do you can drive?~~

Short answers

Yes, she could.
Yes, they could.
No, we couldn't.

Prepositions

I was **at** school.
They're **on** vacation.
I was **at** an exhibition.
She's **in** bed.

He was born **in** January.
He was born **on** January 14.

He's a professor **of** art.
He's good **at** drawing.
What's the Spanish word **for** pencil?

She's married **to** Mike.
What's **on** TV tonight?
What do you want **for** your birthday?
Can I speak **to** Dave?
Can I pay **by** credit card?

6.1 Simple Past – spelling of regular verbs

1 The regular rule is to add *-ed*.
work → worked
start → started
If the verb ends in *-e*, add *-d*.
live → lived
love → loved

2 If the verb has only one syllable and one vowel and one consonant, double the consonant, and add *-ed*.
stop → stopped
plan → planned

3 Verbs that end in a consonant + *-y*, change to *-ied*.
study → studied
carry → carried

6.2 Simple Past

The Simple Past expresses a past action that is finished.
I **lived** in Tokyo when I was six.
She **started** school when she was four.
The form of the Simple Past is the same in all persons.

Affirmative

I He/She/It You/We/They	lived	in Toronto in 1985.

Negative
We use *didn't* + infinitive (without *to*) in all persons.

I He/She/It You/We/They	didn't	live	in Seattle.

Question
We use *did* + subject + infinitive (without *to*) in all persons.

When Where	did	I he/she/it we/you/they	go?

***Yes/No* questions**

Did	you she they etc.	like enjoy	the movie? the party?

Short answers

No, I didn't.
No, we didn't.
Yes, she did.
No, they didn't.

6.3 Irregular verbs

To be is irregular and has two forms in the past.
be → was/were

Other irregular verbs have only one form in the past.
go → went
can → could

See Irregular Verbs p. 152

6.4 Time expressions

last	night month week year Saturday

yesterday	morning afternoon evening

Prepositions

She talks to a lot **of** people.
She helps people all **over** the world.
He talks to friends **on** his phone.
I play **with** my children.
I'm very interested **in** art.

UNIT 7

7.1 Simple Past

For the forms of the Simple Past, see Unit 6 on p. 134.

He **published** his theory of relativity in 1905.
People **landed** on the moon in 1969.
The Berlin Wall **came down** in 1989.

Questions

When **did** it **happen**?
How long **did** you **live** there?
How much allowance **did** you **get**?

But:

How many people **died** in the war?
How many TV shows **were** there?

7.2 Time expressions

in/on/at

in	the twentieth century / 1924 / the 1990s (the) winter / (the) summer / the evening / the morning / September
on	October 10 / Valentine's Day / Saturday / Sunday evening / weekends
at	seven o'clock / night

ago

I went there	ten years / two weeks / a month	ago.

7.3 Adverbs

Adjectives describe nouns.

a **big** dog a **careful** driver

Adverbs describe verbs.

She ran **quickly**. He drives too **fast**.

To form regular adverbs, add *-ly* to the adjective. Words ending in *-y* change to *-ily*.

Adjective	Adverb
quick	quickly
slow	slowly
bad	badly
careful	carefully
real	really
immediate	immediately
easy	easily

Some adverbs are irregular.

Adjective	Adverb
good	well
hard	hard
early	early
fast	fast

Prepositions

It happened **about** 60 years ago.
How many people died **in** the Second World War?
We didn't have computers **in** those days.

He stepped **onto** the moon.
He flew **from** Calais **to** Dover.
He couldn't walk because **of** an injury **to** his leg.
The plane flew **at** 40 mph.
I wasn't worried **about** the machine.

UNIT 8

8.1 Count and noncount nouns

There are countable nouns. These can be singular or plural.

a book → **two** books **an** egg → **six** eggs

There are noncount nouns.

bread rice

Some nouns are both.

We'd like three **ice creams**, please. Do you like **ice cream**?

8.2 *some/any*

We use *some* in affirmative sentences with noncount nouns and plural nouns.

There is	some	bread	on the table.
There are		oranges	

We use *some* in questions when we ask for things and offer things.

Can I have	some	coffee, please?
Would you like		grapes?

We use *any* in questions and negative sentences with noncount nouns and plural nouns.

Is there	any	water?	I don't know if there is any water.
Does she have		children?	I don't know if she has any children.
We don't have		rice.	
There aren't		people.	

8.3 *would like*

Would is the same in all persons.
We use *would like* in offers and requests.

Affirmative

I/He/She We/You/They	'd like	a cup of coffee.	'd = would

***Yes/No* questions**

Would	you/he/she/they	like a cookie?

Short answers

Yes, please.
No, thank you.

8.4 *How much ...?/How many ...?*

We use *How much ...?* with noncount nouns.

How much rice is there? There isn't **much** rice.

We use *How many ...?* with plural count nouns.

How many apples are there? There aren't **many** apples.

Prepositions

"Pasta **for** me." "Same **for** me."
This book is **by** Patricia Cornwell.
I like tablets more **than** laptops.
This is a recipe **for** shepherd's pie.
Put potatoes **on** the list.

He ate it **with** his fingers.
Put the chicken **between** two slices of bread.

I'm looking for a pack **of** four AA batteries.

9.1 Comparative and superlative adjectives

New York is **bigger than** Paris.
Paris is **more romantic**.
It's **the most exciting** place!
This is **the best** restaurant in the world.

	Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
One-syllable adjectives	old safe big hot	older safer bigger* hotter*	the old**est** the saf**est** the big**gest*** the hot**test***
Adjectives ending in *-y*	noisy dirty	noisier dirtier	the noisiest the dirtiest
Two-or more syllable adjectives	boring beautiful	**more** boring** **more** beautiful	the **most** boring** the **most** beautiful
Irregular adjectives	good bad far	**better** **worse** **further**	the **best** the **worst** the **furthest**

* Adjectives that end in one vowel and one consonant double the consonant.

hot → hotter thin → thinner

** Most two-syllable adjectives use *more* and *most*, but some two syllable adjectives use *-er/-est*.

modern → **more** modern → **most** modern
polite → **more** polite → **most** polite
quiet → quieter/quietest
clever → cleverer/cleverest

1 We can make a comparison stronger using *much* and *a lot*.
Paris is **much more beautiful** than New York.
Dave's **a lot more handsome** than Pete.

2 Adverbs also have comparatives.
He works **harder than** you.
Can you come **earlier than** 8:30?

Prepositions

The city is **in** the north.
It's **on** the Hudson River.
It's about 400 km (250 miles) **from** the ocean.

New York's a lot bigger **than** Paris.
Tokyo is **on** the east coast.
It is surrounded **by** mountains.

Go **over** the bridge.
Go **along** the street.
Go **past** the hotel.
Go **around** the traffic circle.
Go **up** the hill and **down** the hill.
Go **through** the woods.
Go **under** the bridge.

10.1 Present Continuous

1 The Present Continuous describes an activity that is happening now.
She's **wearing** jeans.
I'm studying English.

Affirmative and negative

I	am 'm not	watching TV.
He/She/It	is isn't	
We/You/They	are aren't	

Question

What	am	I	thinking?
	is	he/she/it	
	are	we/you/they	

***Yes/No* questions**	**Short answers**
Are you having a good time?	Yes, we are.
Is he studying now?	Yes, he is.
Are they having a party?	No, they aren't.

Spelling of verb + *-ing*

1 Most verbs add *-ing*.
wear → wea**ring**
go → go**ing**
cook → cook**ing**

2 If the infinitive ends in *-e*, drop the *-e* and add *-ing*.
write → writ**ing**
smile → smil**ing**

3 When a one-syllable verb has one vowel and ends in a consonant, double the consonant and add *-ing*.
sit → sit**ting**
get → get**ting**
run → run**ning**

10.2 Simple Present and Present Continuous

1 The Simple Present describes things that are always true, or true for a long time.
I **come** from Mexico.
He **works** in a bank.
He **wears** a suit to work.
Do you **watch** much TV?

2 The Present Continuous describes activities happening now, and temporary activities.
Dave's **coming** to see us now.
I'm working very hard this week.
Why **are** you **wearing** yellow pants?
Shh! **I'm watching** TV!

10.3 *something/nothing* ...

Form

THING	some**thing**/any**thing**/every**thing**/no**thing**
BODY	some**body**/any**body**/every**body**/no**body**
WHERE	some**where**/any**where**/every**where**/no**where**

something/anything ...

The rules are the same as for *some* and *any*.

Affirmative
I'd like **something** to eat.
Somebody called you.

Negative
I didn't go **anywhere**.
I don't know **anybody**.

Question
Does **anybody** know the answer?
Would you like **something** to drink? (= an offer)

nobody/nothing/nowhere

1 The forms *nobody/nothing/nowhere* can be stronger than *not anybody/anything/anywhere*.
I didn't buy **anything**.
I bought **nothing**. (= stronger, more emphatic)

2 We use these forms as the subject of a sentence.
Nobody loves me.
Nothing is cheap these days.

3 We use them in one word answers.
"Where did you go?" "**Nowhere**."

4 We don't use two negatives.
I **didn't** see **anybody**. NOT ~~I didn't see nobody.~~
Nothing is easy. NOT ~~Nothing isn't easy.~~

Prepositions

I'm **on** my way home.
She's working **on** her laptop.

He works **for** an international bank.
Who are you talking **to**?
They're looking **at** some photos.
There's someone **on** the phone **for** you.

We are learning **about** history.
Astronauts work **during** the week.
They like to look out **of** the window.

UNIT 11

11.1 *going to*

1 *Going to* expresses a person's plans and intentions.
She's **going to be** a ballet dancer when she grows up.
We're **going to take** a vacation this summer.

2 We also use *going to* when we can see now that something is sure to happen in the future.
Look at those clouds. It's **going to rain.** (= I'm sure.)

Affirmative and negative

I	'm	(not) going to	take a break. stay at home. be late.
He/She/It	's		
We/You/They	're		

Questions

When	am	I	going to	take a break? stay at home?
	is	he/she/it		
	are	we/you/they		

11.2 *going to* and Present Continuous

1 The Present Continuous can also describe a future intention.
I'm **playing** tennis this afternoon.
Jane's **seeing** her cousin tonight.

2 Often there is little difference between *going to* and the Present Continuous to refer to future time.
I'm **seeing** Peter tonight.
I'm **going to see** Peter tonight.

3 With the verbs *to go* and *to come*, we usually use the Present Continuous.
We're **going to** Tokyo next week.
Joe and Tim **are coming** for lunch tomorrow.

NOT ~~We're going to go ....~~
~~They're going to come ...~~

11.3 Infinitive of purpose

The infinitive can express why a person does something.

I'm saving my money **to buy** a new TV.
(= I want to buy a new TV.)

We're going to Brazil **to have** a vacation.
(= We want to have a vacation.)

NOT ~~I'm saving my money for to buy a new TV.~~
~~I'm saving my money for buy a new TV.~~

Prepositions

I'm going **on** vacation ten days from now.
I spend my money **on** clothes.

He's **on** top of the wall.

I'm going **on** a safari.
I'm happy **with** my life.

What's the weather **like**?

UNIT 12

12.1 Present Perfect

1 The Present Perfect is formed with *have/has* + past participle.

▶▶ See Irregular past participles p. 152

2 The Present Perfect refers to an action or experience that happened at some time before now.
She's **traveled** to most parts of the world.
Have you ever **been** in a car accident?

Affirmative and negative

I/We/You/They	have	(not) been	to Hong Kong.
He/She/It	has		

I've been = I have been
We've been = We have been
They've been = They have been

Question

Where	have	I/you/we/they	been?
	has	she/he/it	

***Yes/No* questions**
Have you been to Rio de Janeiro?

Short answers
Yes, I have./No, I haven't.

12.2 Simple Past and Present Perfect

1 If we want to say **when** an action happened, we use the Simple Past, not the Present Perfect.
She **went** to Tokyo **two years ago.** I **was** in a crash **when I was 10.**

2 Notice the time expressions used with the Simple Past.

last night / yesterday / in 1995 / at three o'clock / on Monday

12.3 Indefinite time

Ever, *never*, and *yet* refer to indefinite time.

ever and *never*

We use *ever* in questions.
Have you **ever** been to Mexico?
We use *never* in negative sentences.
I've **never** been to Mexico.

yet

We use *yet* in negative sentences and questions.
Have you done your homework **yet**?
I haven't done it **yet.** (= but I'm going to)

Prepositions

She's excited **about** her trip.
I haven't traveled **outside** Australia.
I travel **inside** my country.
We're waiting **for** a taxi.

I've never heard **of** that band.

Word List

Here is a list of most of the new words in the units of *American Headway, Third edition* Student Book 1.

adj = adjective
adv = adverb
conj = conjunction
interj = interjection
pl = plural
prep = preposition
pron = pronoun
pp = past participle
n = noun
v = verb
infml = *informal*

UNIT 1

age *n* /eɪdʒ/
all right *adj* /ɔl raɪt/
American *adj* /ə'merɪkən/
Argentina *n* /ˌɑrdʒən'tinə/
Asia *n* /'eɪʒə/
aunt *n* /ænt; ɑnt/
bad *adj* /bæd/
beautiful *adj* /'byutəfl/
big *adj* /bɪg/
blog *n* /blɑg; blɔg/
boyfriend *n* /'bɔɪfrend/
Brazil *n* /brə'zɪl/
Brazilian *n* /brə'zɪlyən/
brother *n* /'brʌðər/
bye /baɪ/
café *n* /kæ'feɪ/
Canada *n* /'kænədə/
car *n* /kɑr/
center *n* /'sentər/
cheap *adj* /tʃip/
children *pl n* /'tʃɪldrən/
China *n* /'tʃaɪnə/
city *n* /'sɪti/
class *n* /klæs/
cold *adj* /koʊld/
cousin *n* /'kʌzn/
difficult *adj* /'dɪfɪˌkʌlt; 'dɪfɪkəlt/
doctor *n* /'dɑktər/
easy *adj* /'izi/
email address *n* /'imeɪl ə'dres/
English *adj* /'ɪŋglɪʃ/
expensive *adj* /ɪk'spensɪv/
family *n* /'fæmli/
fast *adj* /fæst/
father *n* /'fɑðər/
first name *n* /fərst neɪm/
free *adj* /fri/
French *adj* /frentʃ/
Friday *n* /'fraɪdeɪ; 'fraɪdi/
friendly *adj* /'frendli/
from *prep* /frəm/
fun *adj* /fʌn/
gallery *n* /'gæləri/
girl *n* /gərl/
girlfriend *n* /'gərlfrend/
good *adj* /gʊd/
good afternoon *interj* /ˌgʊd æftər'nun/
good morning *interj* /ˌgʊd 'mɔrnɪŋ/
good night *interj* /ˌgʊd naɪt/
goodbye *interj* /ˌgʊd'baɪ; gə'baɪ/
grandfather *n* /'græn,fɑðər/
grandmother *n* /'græn,mʌðər/
great *adj* /greɪt/
hello *interj* /hə'loʊ/
help *v* /help/
her *pron* /hər/
hi *interj* /haɪ/
his *pron* /hɪz/
home *n* /hoʊm/
homework *n* /'hoʊmwərk/
honey *n* /'hʌni/
hot *adj* /hɑt/
house *n* /haʊs/
husband *n* /'hʌzbənd/
interesting *adj* /'ɪntrəstɪŋ/
international *adj* /ˌɪntər'næʃənl/
Japan *n* /dʒə'pæn/
Korea *n* /kə'riə/
language *n* /'læŋgwɪdʒ/
like *v* /laɪk/
live *v* /lɪv/
look *v* /lʊk/
love *v* /lʌv/
married *adj* /'mærid/
meal *n* /mil/
meet *v* /mit/
Mexico *n* /'meksɪˌkoʊ/
Monday *n* /'mʌndeɪ; 'mʌndi/
mother *n* /'mʌðər/
museum *n* /myu'ziəm/
name *n* /neɪm/
near *adj* /nɪr/
nephew *n* /'nefyu/
nice *adj* /naɪs/
niece *n* /nis/
office *n* /'ɔfəs; 'ɑfəs/
old *adj* /oʊld/
parents *pl n* /'perənts/
park *n* /pɑrk/
part *n* /pɑrt/
people *pl n* /'pipl/
phone number *n* /foʊn 'nʌmbər/
places *pl n* /pleɪsɪz/
please *v* /pliz/
really *adv* /'rili/
salesperson *n* /'seɪlzˌpərsn/
school *n* /skul/
shopping *n* /'ʃɑpɪŋ/
sister *n* /'sɪstər/
slow *adj* /sloʊ/
small *adj* /smɔl/
son *n* /sʌn/
speak *v* /spik/
spell *v* /spel/
student *n* /'studnt/
subway *n* /'sʌbweɪ/
sunny *adj* /'sʌni/
teacher *n* /'titʃər/
thank goodness /θæŋk 'gʊdnəs/
thanks /θæŋks/
them *pron* /ðəm/
today *n* /tə'deɪ/
Turkey *n* /'tərki/
uncle *n* /'ʌŋkl/
understand *v* /ˌʌndər'stænd/
university *n* /ˌyunə'vərsəi/
very well *adv* /'veri wel/
weather *n* /'weðər/
weekend *n* /'wikend/
welcome *v* /'welkəm/
west *n* /west/
what *pron* /wʌt; wət/
where *adv* /wer/
wife *n* /waɪf/
year *n* /yɪr/
young *adj* /yʌŋ/

UNIT 2

accountant *n* /ə'kaʊntnt/
actor *n* /'æktər/
airport *n* /'ɛrpɔrt/
animal *n* /'ænəml/
architect *n* /'ɑrkə,tɛkt/
ballet dancer *n* /bæ'leɪ 'dænsər/
banker *n* /'bæŋkər/
beach *n* /bitʃ/
Bengali *n* /bɛŋ'gɔli/
building *n* /'bɪldɪŋ/
busy *adj* /'bɪzi/
capital *n* /'kæpətl/
clock *n* /klɑk/
college *n* /'kɑlɪdʒ/
come *v* /kʌm/
cost *v* /kɔst/
country *n* /'kʌntri/
cut *v* /kʌt/
cycling *n* /'saɪklɪŋ/
dentist *n* /'dɛntɪst/
design *v* /dɪ'zaɪn/
director *n* /də'rɛktər; daɪ'rɛktər/
disc jockey *n* /dɪsk 'dʒɑki/
earn *v* /ərn/
engineer *n* /,ɛndʒə'nɪr/
exactly *adv* /ɪg'zæktli/
exciting *adj* /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/
famous *adj* /'feɪməs/
fish *v* /fɪʃ/
free time *n* /fri taɪm/
free-time *adj* /fri taɪm/
go *v* /goʊ/
gym *n* /dʒɪm/
hair *n* /hɛr/
hairstylist *n* /'hɛr,staɪlɪst/
have *v* /hæv/
history *n* /'hɪstəri/
hotel *n* /hoʊ'tɛl/
hour *n* /'aʊər/
housework *n* /'haʊswərk/
hurry *v* /'həri/
India *n* /'ɪndiə/
interpreter *n* /ɪn'tərprətər/
job *n* /dʒɑʊb/
journalist *n* /'dʒərnəlɪst/
law firm *n* /lɔ fərm/
lawyer *n* /'lɔɪər/
learn *v* /lərn/
little *adj* /'lɪtl/
lots (of sth) *pl n* /lɑts/
lucky *adj* /'lʌki/
lunch *n* /lʌntʃ/
many *pron* /'mɛni/
math *n* /mæθ/
model *n* /'mɑdl/
money *n* /'mʌni/
mountains *pl n* /'maʊntnz/
natural *adj* /'nætʃrəl; 'nætʃərəl/
never *adv* /'nɛvər/
New Zealand *n* /,nu 'ziləɪnd/
news story *n* /nuz 'stori/
newspaper *n* /'nuz,peɪpər/
nurse *n* /nərs/
oceanographer *n* /,oʊʃə'nɑgrəfər/
o'clock *adv* /ə'klɑk/
oil rig *n* /ɔɪl rɪg/
outdoors *adv* /,aʊt'dɔrz/
physics *n* /'fɪzɪks/
pilot *n* /'paɪlət/
play *v* /pleɪ/
please *adv* /pliz/
pool *n* /pul/
poor *adj* /pʊr/
pop star *n* /pɑp stɑr/
reading *n* /'ridɪŋ/
receptionist *n* /rɪ'sɛpʃənɪst/
research *v* /rɪ'sərtʃ; 'risərtʃ/
salary *n* /'sæləri/
soccer *n* /'sɑkər/
sometimes *adv* /'sʌmtaɪmz/
Spanish *adj* /'spænɪʃ/
squash *n* /skwɑʃ/
street *n* /strit/
study *v* /'stʌdi/
taxi driver *n* /'tæksi draɪvər/
teeth *n* /tiθ/
the US *n* /ðə ,yu ɛs/
time *n* /taɪm/
tired *adj* /'taɪərd/
town *n* /taʊn/
travel *v* /'trævl/
TV *n* /,ti 'vi/
village *n* /'vɪlɪdʒ/
visit *v* /'vɪzət/
walk *v* /wɔk/
watch *v* /wɑtʃ/
work *v* /wərk/
world *n* /wərld/
write *v* /raɪt/
zoologist *n* /zoʊ'ɑlədʒɪst/

UNIT 3

address *n* /ə'drɛs; 'ædrɛs/
always *adv* /'ɔlweɪz/
apartment *n* /ə'pɑrtmənt/
application form *n* /,æplə'keɪʃn fɔrm/
backyard *n* /,bæk'yɑrd/
badminton *n* /'bæd,mɪtn; 'bæd,mɪntn/
band *n* /bænd/
barbecuing *n* /'bɑrbɪ,kyuɪŋ/
barefoot *adj* /'berfʊt/
bed *n* /bɛd/
bilingual *adj* /,baɪ'lɪŋgwəl/
books *pl n* /bʊks/
bookstore *n* /'bʊkstɔr/
boutiques *pl n* /bu'tiks/
cards *pl n* /kɑrdz/
cell phone *n* /sɛl foʊn/
chicken *n* /'tʃɪkən/
computer *n* /kəm'pyutər/
cook *v* /kʊk/
dancing *n* /'dænsɪŋ/
early *adj* /'ərli/
enjoy *v* /ɪn'dʒɔɪ/
evening *n* /'ivnɪŋ/
exchange students *pl n* /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ 'studnts/
excuse me /ɪk'skyus mi/
exercise *n* /'ɛksər,saɪz/
fall *n* /fɔl/
farmer's market *n* /'fɑrmərz 'mɑrkət/
finish *v* /'fɪnɪʃ/
foreign *adj* /'fɔrən/
get up *v* /'get ʌp/
golf *n* /gɑlf; gɔlf/
grass *n* /græs/
happy *adj* /'hæpi/
Hawaii *n* /hə'waɪi/
healthy *adj* /'hɛlθi/
hip-hop *n* /hɪp hɑp/
indoor *adj* /'ɪndɔr/
Japanese *adj* /,dʒæpə'niz/
Korean *adj* /kə'riən/
listen *v* /'lɪsn/
movie *n* /'muvi/
music *n* /'myuzɪk/
often *adv* /'ɔfn/
outdoor *adj* /'aʊtdɔr/
perfect /'pərfɪkt/
personal *adj* /'pərsənl/
Portuguese *adj* /,pɔrtʃə'giz/
postcard *n* /'poʊstkɑrd/
problem *n* /'prɑbləm/
program *n* /'proʊgræm/
restaurant *n* /'rɛstə,rɑnt/
roast *n* /roʊst/
running *n* /'rʌnɪŋ/
sailing *n* /'seɪlɪŋ/
Saturday *n* /'sætər,deɪ; 'sætərdi/
singer *n* /'sɪŋər/
skiing *n* /'skiɪŋ/
sneakers *pl n* /'snikərz/
soup *n* /sup/
spring *n* /sprɪŋ/
summer *n* /'sʌmər/
Sunday *n* /'sʌndeɪ; 'sʌndi/
sweater *n* /'swɛtər/
swimming *n* /'swɪmɪŋ/
tennis *n* /'tɛnəs/
Thailand *n* /'taɪlænd/
Thursday *n* /'θərzdeɪ; 'θərzdi/
traffic *n* /'træfɪk/
Tuesday /'tuzdeɪ ;'tuzdi/
usually *adv* /'yuʒuəli/
vacation *n* /veɪ'keɪʃn/
vegetables *pl n* /'vɛdʒtəblz/
warm *adj* /wɔrm/
Wednesday *n* /'wɛnzdeɪ; 'wɛnzdi/
week *n* /wik/
windsurfing *n* /'wɪnd,sərfɪŋ/
winter *n* /'wɪntər/
yoga *n* /'yoʊgə/

UNIT 4

above *prep* /ə'bʌv/
across from *prep* /ə'krɔs/
amazing *adj* /ə'meɪzɪŋ/
armchair *n* /'ɑrmtʃer/
awful *adj* /'ɔfl/
balcony *n* /'bælkəni/
bathroom *n* /'bæθrum/
bedroom *n* /'bɛdrum/
bench *n* /bɛntʃ/
birthday *n* /'bərθdeɪ/
bookshelves *pl n* /'bʊkʃɛlvz/
boss *n* /bɔs/
bowling alley *n* /'boʊlɪŋ 'æli,/
bus fare *n* /bʌs fɛr/
bus stop *n* /bʌs stɑp/
carpet *n* /'kɑrpət/
charger *n* /'tʃɑrdʒər/
choose *v* /tʃuz/
clothes *pl n* /kloʊz/
clothing *n* /'kloʊðɪŋ/
coat *n* /koʊt/
color *n* /'kʌlər/
comb *n* /koʊm/
comfortable *adj* /'kʌmftərbl/
cool *adj* /kul/
cup *n* /kʌp/
curtains *pl n* /'kərtnz/
desk *n* /dɛsk/
dining room *n* /daɪnɪŋ rum/
dinner *n* /'dɪnər/
drugstore *n* /'drʌgstɔr/
eat *v* /it/
elevator *n* /'ɛlə,veɪtər/
excellent *adj* /'ɛksələnt/
fabulous *adj* /'fæbyələs/
fantastic *adj* /fæn'tæstɪk/
fireplace *n* /'faɪər,pleɪs/
fruit *n* /frut/
furniture *n* /'fərnɪtʃər/
gardener *n* /'gɑrdnər/
gift *n* /gɪft/
glass *n* /glæs/
glasses *pl n* /glæsɪz/
government building *n* /'gʌvərmənt 'bɪldɪŋ/
grow *v* /groʊ/
guest *n* /gɛst/
holiday *n* /'hɑlə,deɪ/
horrible *adj* /'hɔrəbl/
in *prep* /ɪn/
jogging track *n* /'dʒɑgɪŋ træk/
keys *pl n* /kiz/
kitchen *n* /'kɪtʃən/
lamp *n* /læmp/
library *n* /'laɪ,brɛri/
lipstick *n* /læmp/
living room *n* /'lɪvɪŋ rum; rʊm/
mirror *n* /'mɪrər/
movie theater *n* /'muvi 'θiətər/
mug *n* /mʌg/
next to *prep* /nɛkst tə/
notebook *n* /'noʊtbʊk/
on *prep* /ɑn/
outside *prep* /,aʊt'saɪd/
oven *n* /'ʌvn/
party *n* /'pɑrti/
pen *n* /pɛn/
phone *n* /foʊn/
picture *n* /'pɪktʃər/
plate *n* /pleɪt/
post office *n* /poʊst 'ɔfəs/
president *n* /'prɛzədənt/
public *n* /'pʌblɪk/
refrigerator *n* /rɪ'frɪdʒə,reɪtər/
relax *v* /rɪ'læks/
rent *v* /rɛnt/
second floor *n* /'sɛkənd flɔr/
shoes *pl n* /ʃuz/
shower *n* /'ʃaʊər/
sidewalk *n* /'saɪdwɔk/
sleep *v* /slip/
sofa *n* /'soʊfə/
stove *n* /stoʊv/
swimming pool *n* /'swɪmɪŋ pul/
table *n* /'teɪbl/
teakettle *n* /'ti,kɛtl/
tennis court *n* /'tɛnəs kɔrt/
terrible *adj* /'tɛrəbl/
third floor *n* /θərd flɔr/
towel *n* /'taʊəl/
tree *n* /tri/
under *prep* /'ʌndər/
unfortunately *adv* /ʌn'fɔrtʃənətli/
visitor *n* /'vɪzətər/
wall *n* /wɔl/
wallet *n* /'wɑlət/
washing machine *n* /'wɑʃɪŋ mə'ʃin/
wedding *n* /'wɛdɪŋ/
window *n* /'wɪndoʊ/
wing *n* /wɪŋ/
wonderful *adj* /'wʌndərfl/
world-famous *adj* /wərld 'feɪməs/
yard *n* /yɑrd/

UNIT 5

ad *n* /,æd/
afford *v* /ə'fɔrd/
art *n* /ɑrt/
artist *n* /'ɑrtɪst/
Australia *n* /ɔ'streɪlyə/
bag *n* /bæg/
bike *n* /baɪk/
borrow *v* /'bɑroʊ/
business *n* /'bɪznəs/
businessman *n* /'bɪznəs,mæn/
businessperson *n* /'bɪznəs 'pərsn/
certainly *adv* /'sərtnli/
check *n* /tʃɛk/
cheese *n* /tʃiz/
child *n* /tʃaɪld/
Chinese *adj* /,tʃaɪ'niz/
classical music *n* /'klæsɪkl 'myuzɪk/
concert *n* /'kɑnsərt/
country and western *n* /'kʌntri ənd 'wɛstərn/
credit card *n* /'krɛdət kɑrd/
cry *v* /kraɪ/
drive *v* /draɪv/
dry-cleaning *n* /draɪ 'klinɪŋ/
exhibition *n* /,ɛksə'bɪʃn/
favor *n* /'feɪvər/
fly *v* /flaɪ/
foreign language *n* /'fɔrən 'læŋgwɪdʒ/
gas *n* /gæs/
glasses *pl n* /glæsɪz/
guitar *n* /gɪ'tɑr/
hard *adv* /hɑrd/
hardworking *adj* /,hɑrd'wərkɪŋ/
hero *n* /'hɪroʊ/
homemaker *n* /'hoʊm,meɪkər/
ice cream *n* /aɪs krim/
important *adj* /ɪm'pɔrtnt/
independent *adj* /,ɪndɪ'pɛndənt/
interested *adj* /'ɪntrəstəd/
jeans *n* /dʒinz/
jump *v* /dʒʌmp/
light *n* /laɪt/
mail *v* /meɪl/
menu *n* /'mɛnyu/
Mexican *adj* /'mɛksɪkən/
moment *n* /'moʊmənt/
motorcycle *n* /'moʊtər,saɪkl/
musical instrument *n* /'myuzɪkl 'ɪnstrəmənt/
occasion *n* /ə'keɪʒn/
open *v* /'oʊpən/
paint *v* /peɪnt/
painter *n* /'peɪntər/
painting *n* /'peɪntɪŋ/
passionate *adj* /'pæʃənət/
pay *v* /peɪ/
pianist *n* /pi'ænɪst/
piano *n* /pi'ænoʊ/
prodigy *n* /'prɑdədʒi/
professionally *adv* /prə'fɛʃənəli/
proud *adj* /praʊd/
resort *n* /rɪ'zɔrt/
rich *adj* /rɪtʃ/
ride *v* /raɪd/
round-trip *adj* /raʊnd trɪp/
sandwich *n* /'sænwɪtʃ/
see *v* /si/
send *v* /sɛnd/
sentimental *adj* /,sɛntə'mɛntl/
sick *adj* /sɪk/
sit *v* /sɪt/
skateboard *n* /'skeɪtbɔrd/
station *n* /'steɪʃn/
stop *v* /stɑp/
succeed *v* /sək'sid/
success *n* /sək'sɛs/
suit *n* /sut/
sun *n* /sʌn/
take care of *v* /teɪk kɛr əv/
talented *adj* /'tælənted/
talk *v* /tɔk/
television *n* /'tɛlə,vɪʒn/
text message *n* /tɛkst 'mɛsɪdʒ/
ticket *n* /'tɪkət/
tie *n* /taɪ/
tour guide *n* /tʊr gaɪd/
train *n* /treɪn/
turkey *n* /'tərki/
turn back *v* /tərn bæk/
violin *n* /,vaɪə'lɪn/
violinist *n* /,vaɪə'lɪnɪst/
water *n* /'wɔtər/
wear *v* /wɛr/

UNIT 6

advice *n* /ədˈvaɪs/
again *adv* /əˈgen/
annoyed *adj* /əˈnɔɪd/
any more *adv* /ˈɛni mɔr/
arrive *v* /əˈraɪv/
artistic *adj* /ɑrˈtɪstɪk/
ask *v* /æsk/
award *n* /əˈwɔrd/
before *prep* /bɪˈfɔr/
begin *v* /bɪˈfɔr/
behavior *n* /bɪˈhervyər/
best friend *n* /best frend/
billionaire *n* /ˌbɪlyəˈner/
boat *n* /bout/
bored *adj* /bɔrd/
born *pp* /bɔrn/
breakfast *n* /ˈbrekfəst/
catch *v* /kætʃ/
century *n* /ˈsɛntʃəri/
charity *n* /ˈtʃærəti/
childhood *n* /ˈtʃaɪldhʊd/
circus *n* /ˈsərkəs/
clean *v* /klin/
company *n* /ˈkʌmpəni/
Costa Rica *n* /ˌkoʊstə ˈrikə/
dad *n* /dæd/
date *n* /deɪt/
designer *n* /dɪˈzaɪnər/
die *v* /daɪ/
dollars *pl n* /ˈdɑlərz/
dyslexic *adj* /dɪsˈleksɪk/
earn *v* /ərn/
emails *pl n* /ˈimeɪlz/
enough *adv* /ɪˈnʌf/
entrepreneur *n* /ˌɑntrəprəˈnər/
everything *pron* /ˈɛvriˌθɪŋ/
everywhere *adv* /ˈɛvriˌwer/
exam *n* /ɪgˈzæm/
excited *adj* /ɪkˈsaɪtəd/
exclaim *v* /ɪkˈskleɪm/
explorer *n* /ɪkˈsplɔrər/
export *v* /ɪkˈspɔrt/
fashion show *n* /ˈfæʃn ʃoʊ/
festival *n* /ˈfestəvl/
fish *n* /fɪʃ/
fisherman *n* /ˈfɪʃərmən/
friend *n* /frend/
full *adj* /fʊl/
funny *adj* /ˈfʌni/
game *n* /geɪm/
gentleman *n* /ˈdʒentlmən/
give *v* /gɪv/
great-grandparents *pl n* /greɪt ˈgræn,perənts/
interview *v* /ˈɪntərˌvyu/
island *n* /ˈaɪlənd/
join *v* /dʒɔɪn/
last night /læst naɪt/
last year /læst yɪr/
late *adj* /leɪt/
law *n* /lɔ/
laugh *v* /læf/
leave *v* /liv/
lecture *n* /ˈlektʃər/
local *adj* /ˈloʊkl/
longer *adj* /ˈlɔŋgər/
lose *v* /luz/
make *v* /meɪk/
marathon *n* /ˈmærəˌθɑn/
matter *v* /ˈmætər/
millionaire *n* /ˌmɪlyəˈner/
minutes *pl n* /ˈmɪnəts/
month *n* /mʌnθ/
move *v* /muv/
much *det* /mʌtʃ/
nationality *n* /ˌnæʃəˈnæləti/
nothing *pro* /ˈnʌθɪŋ/
owner *n* /ˈoʊnər/
performer *n* /pərˈfɔrmər/
plan *v* /ən/
present *n* /ˈprezənt/
publish *v* /ˈpʌblɪʃ/
receive *v* /rɪˈsiv/
return *v* /rɪˈtərn/
richest *adj* /rɪtʃɪst/
siesta *n* /siˈestə/
soccer *n* /ˈsɑkər/
software *n* /ˈsɔftwer/
start *v* /stɑrt/
stay in touch *v* /steɪ ɪn tʌtʃ/
successful *adj* /səkˈsesfl/
talk show *n* /tɔk ʃoʊ/
toast *n* /toʊst/
tomorrow *adv* /təˈmɑroʊ/
troupe *n* /trup/
win *v* /wɪn/
women *pl n* /ˈwɪmən/
worried *adj* /ˈwərid/
yesterday *adv* /ˈyestərˌdeɪ; ˈyestərdi/

UNIT 7

accident *n* /ˈæksədənt/
air *n* /er/
allowance *n* /əˈlaʊəns/
altitude *n* /ˈæltəˌtud/
arthritis *n* /ɑrˈθraɪtəs/
astronaut *n* /ˈæstrəˌnɔt/
at *prep* /ət/
aviation *n* /ˌeɪviˈeɪʃn/
badly *adv* /ˈbædli/
because *conj* /bɪˈkʌz/
cake *n* /keɪk/
candy *n* /ˈkændi/
carefully *adv* /ˈkerfəli/
channels *pl n* /ˈtʃænlz/
chocolate *n* /ˈtʃɑklət/
collect *v* /kəˈlekt/
comic books *pl n* /ˈkɑmɪk bʊks/
compass *n* /ˈkʌmpəs/
complete *v* /kəmˈplit/
congratulations *pl n* /kənˌgrætʃəˈleɪʃnz/
crash *v* /kræʃ/
creative *adj* /kriˈeɪtɪv/
crossing *n* /ˈkrɔsɪŋ/
dangerous *adj* /ˈdeɪndʒərəs/
deeply *adv* /ˈdipli/
dishwasher *n* /ˈdɪʃˌwɑʃər/
education *n* /ˌedʒəˈkeɪʃn/
enormous *adj* /ɪˈnɔrməs/
equipment *n* /ɪˈkwɪpmənt/
events *pl n* /ɪˈvents/
exploration *n* /ˌekspləˈreɪʃn/
fast food *n* /fæst fud/
finally *adv* /ˈfaɪnli/
fireworks *pl n* /ˈfaɪərˌwərks/
flag *n* /flæg/
flight *n* /flaɪt/
fluently *adv* /ˈfluəntli/
fog *n* /fɔg/
fortunately *adv* /ˈfɔrtʃənətli/
giant *n* /ˈdʒaɪənt/
graduation *n* /ˌgrædʒuˈeɪʃn/
habit *n* /ˈhæbət/
Halloween n/ˌhæləˈwin/
high school *n* /haɪ skul/
hits *pl n* /hɪts/
hospital *n* /ˈhɑspɪtl/
immediately *adv* /ɪˈmidiətli/
impossible *adj* /ɪmˈpɑsəbl/
injury *n* /ˈɪndʒəri/
inscription *n* /ɪnˈskrɪpʃn/
invitation *n* /ˌɪnvəˈteɪʃn/
invite *v* /ɪnˈvaɪt/
It sounds great! /ɪt saʊndz greɪt/
know *v* /noʊ/
land *v* /lænd/
leap *v* /lip/
life *n* /laɪf/
lift off *v* /lɪft ɔf/
lunar module *n* /ˈlunər ˈmɑdʒul/
mall *n* /mɔl/
midnight *n* /ˈmɪdnaɪt/
modern *adj* /ˈmɑdərn/
moon *n* /mun/
no idea /noʊ aɪˈdiə/
nonstop *adj* /ˌnɑnˈstɑp/
on *prep* /ɑn/
passport *n* /ˈpæspɔrt/
peace *n* /pis/
person *n* /ˈpərsn/
philosophy *n* /fəˈlɑsəfi/
pioneer *n* /ˌpaɪəˈnɪr/
planes *pl n* /pleɪnz/
prepare *v* /prɪˈper/
professor *n* /prəˈfesər/
psychology *n* /saɪˈkɑlədʒi/
put up *v* /pʊt ʌp/
quickly *adv* /ˈkwɪkli/
quietly *adv* /ˈkwaɪətli/
relativity *n* /ˌreləˈtɪvəti/
remember *v* /rɪˈmembər/
reporters *pl n* /rɪˈpɔrtərz/
rocket *n* /ˈrɑkət/
rocks *pl n* /rɑks/
roses *pl n* /ˈroʊzɪz/
sailor *n* /ˈseɪlər/
samples *pl n* /ˈsæmplz/
sell *v* /sel/
semester *n* /səˈmestər/
shirt *n* /ʃərt/
slowly *adv* /ˈsloʊli/
space *n* /speɪs/
spend (time) *v* /spend taɪm /
step *n* /step/
suddenly *adv* /ˈsʌdnli/
surface *n* /ˈsərfəs/
Thanksgiving *n* /ˌθæŋksˈgɪvɪŋ/
theme parks *pl n* /θim pɑrks/
theory *n* /ˈθɪri/
umbrella *n* /ʌmˈbrelə/
Valentine's Day *n* /ˈvælənˌtaɪnz deɪ/
voyage *pl n* /ˈvɔɪɪdʒ/
wake up *v* /weɪk ʌp/
wave *v* /weɪv/
whole *adj* /hoʊl/
wool *n* /wʊl/

UNIT 8

adaptor *n* /ə'dæptər/
add *v* /æd/
any *det* /'eni/
apple *n* /'æpl/
apple juice *n* /'æpl dʒus/
aspirin *n* /'æsprən/
bagel *n* /'beɪgl/
banana *n* /bə'nænə/
Band-Aids *pl n* /bænd eɪdz/
basil *n* /'beɪzl/
batteries *pl n* /'bætəriz/
beef *n* /bif/
boil *v* /bɔɪl/
boring *adj* /'bɔrɪŋ/
bottle *n* /'bɑtl/
boy *n* /bɔɪ/
bread *n* /bred/
broccoli *n* /'brɑkəli/
butter *n* /'bʌtər/
card shop *n* /kɑrd ʃɑp/
cards *pl n* /kɑrdz/
carrots *pl n* /'kærəts/
cartoon characters *pl n* /kɑr'tun 'kærəktərz/
cats *pl n* /kæts/
chef *n* /ʃef/
chips *pl n* /tʃɪps/
chop *n* /tʃɑp/
club *n* /klʌb/
cold drink *n* /kould drɪŋk/
cookbook *n* /'kukbʊk/
cookies *pl n* /'kukiz/
cooking *n* /'kukɪŋ/
croissant *n* /krə'sɑnt/
daily *adj* /'deɪli/
delicious *adj* /dɪ'lɪʃəs/
disgusting *adj* /dɪs'gʌstɪŋ/
dozen *n* /'dʌzn/
drugstore *n* /'drʌgstɔr/
dry *adj* /draɪ/
eggs *pl n* /egs/
Englishman *n* /'ɪŋglɪʃmən/
envelopes *pl n* /'envə,loups/
especially *adv* /ɪ'speʃəli/
favorite *adj* /'feɪvrət/
flowers *pl n* /'flaʊərz/
forget *v* /fər'get/
French fries *pl n* /frentʃ fraɪz/
fry *v* /fraɪ/
ground *adj* /graʊnd/
hardware store *n* /'hɑrdwer stɔr/
herbs *pl n* /ərbz/
how much /haʊ mʌtʃ/
hungry *adj* /'hʌŋgri/
I'm afraid /aɪm ə'freɪd/
ingredient *n* /ɪn'gridiənt/
kid *n* /kɪd/
large *adj* /lɑrdʒ/
layer *n* /'leɪər/
light bulb *n* /laɪt bʌlb/
list *n* /lɪst/
magazine *n* /'mægə,zin/
meat *n* /mit/
medium *adj* /'midiəm/
milk *n* /mɪlk/
miss *v* /mɪs/
mix *v* /mɪks/
mustard *n* /'mʌstərd/
need *v* /nid/
no problem /nou 'prɑbləm/
nuts *pl n* /nʌts/
oil *n* /ɔɪl/
olives *pl n* /'ɑlɪvz/
onions *pl n* /'ʌnyənz/
order *v* /'ɔrdər/
out *prep* /aʊt/
pack *n* /pæk/
pasta *n* /'pɑstə/
peanut butter *n* /'pinʌt 'bʌtər/
peas *pl n* /piz/
pepper *n* /'pepər/
phone case *n* /foʊn keɪs/
picky *adj* /'pɪki/
popular *adj* /'pɑpyələr/
potatoes *pl n* /pə'teɪtouz/
pound *n* /paʊnd/
raspberry *n* /'ræz,beri/
recipe *n* /'resəpi/
recorded *v* /rɪ'kɔrdɪd/
salad *n* /'sæləd/
salt *n* /sɔlt/
scissors *pl n* /'sɪzərz/
screwdriver *n* /'skru,draɪvər/
server *n* /'sərvər/
shampoo *n* /ʃæm'pu/
shepherd's pie *n* /'ʃepərdz paɪ/
size *n* /saɪz/
slice *n* /slaɪs/
smoothie *n* /'smuði/
some *det* /səm/
sorry *adj* /'sɑri/
spaghetti *n* /spə'geti/
spend *v* /spend/
spices *pl n* /spaɪsɪz/
sports *pl n* /spɔrts/
stamp *n* /stæmp/
starving *adj* /stɑrvɪŋ/
steak *n* /steɪk/
strawberries *pl n* /'strɔ,beriz/
sugar *n* /'ʃʊgər/
survey *n* /'sərveɪ/
tap water *n* /tæp 'wɔtər/
tea *n* /ti/
thyme *n* /taɪm/
tomatoes *pl n* /tə'meɪtouz/
toothpaste *n* /tə'meɪtoʊ/
try *v* /traɪ/
until *prep* /ən'tɪl/
worldwide *adj* /,wərld'waɪd/
worry *v* /'wəri/
yogurt *n* /'yougərt/

UNIT 9

accent *n* /'æksent/
air *n* /er/
architecture *n* /'ɑrkə,tektʃər/
area *n* /'eriə/
banks *pl n* /bæŋks/
blossoms *n* /'blɑsəmz/
capital city *n* /'kæpətl 'sɪti/
careful *adj* /'kerfl/
celebrities *pl n* /sə'lebrətiz/
central *adj* /'sentrəl/
change *v* /tʃeɪndʒ/
cherry *n* /'tʃeri/
city hall *n* /'sɪti hɔl/
climate *n* /'klaɪmət/
coast *n* /koʊst/
colonial *adj* /kə'louniəl/
commercial center *n* /kə'mərʃl 'sentər/
commuter *n* /kə'myutər/
crosswalk *n* /'krɔswɔk/
crowded *adj* /'kraʊdəd/
culture *n* /'kʌltʃər/
earthquake *n* /'ərθkweɪk/
east *n* /ist/
electricity *n* /ɪ,lek'trɪsəti/
elegant *adj* /'eləgənt/
elevated *adj* /'elə,veɪtəd/
emperor *n* /'empərər/
empire *n* /'empaɪər/
experience *n* /ɪk'spɪriəns/
extreme *adj* /ɪk'strim/
fashion *n* /'fæʃn/
fishing *n* /'fɪʃɪŋ/
food *n* /fud/
generally *adv* /'dʒenərəli/
gold *n* /gould/
goods *pl n* /gʊdz/
handicrafts *pl n* /'hændi,kræfts/
headquarters *n* /'hed,kwɔrtərz/
high-class *adj* /haɪ klæs/
hill *n* /hɪl/
historic *adj* /hɪ'stɔrɪk/
huge *adj* /hyudʒ/
humid *adj* /'hyuməd/
hundreds *pl n* /'hʌndrədz/
independence *n* /,ɪndɪ'pendəns/
industry *n* /'ɪndəstri/
invade *v* /ɪn'veɪd/
latest *adj* /'leɪtəst/
locals *pl n* /'loʊklz/
loud *adj* /laʊd/
megacity *n* /'megə'sɪti/
Métro *n* /'metroʊ/
multicultural *adj* /,mʌlti'kʌltʃərəl/
north *n* /nɔrθ/
of course /əv kɔrs/
orange *adj* /'ɔrɪndʒ/
originally *adv* /ə'rɪdʒənəli/
palace *n* /'pæləs/
pink *adj* /pɪŋk/
polite *adj* /pə'laɪt/
pollution *n* /pə'luʃn/
population *n* /,pɑpyə'leɪʃn/
poverty *n* /'pɑvərti/
prefer *v* /prɪ'fər/
produce *v* /prə'dus/
public bath *n* /'pʌblɪk bæθ/
public transportation *n* /'pʌblɪk ,trænspər'teɪʃn/
quality *n* /'kwɑləti/
quieter *adj* /'kwaɪətər/
railroad *n* /'reɪlroud/
rainy *adj* /'reɪni/
river *n* /'rɪvər/
romantic *adj* /rou'mæntɪk/
safe *adj* /seɪf/
sanitation *n* /,sænə'teɪʃn/
season *n* /'sizn/
shrine *n* /ʃraɪn/
skyscrapers *pl n* /'skaɪ,skreɪpərz/
slums *pl n* /slʌmz/
snacks *pl n* /snæks/
somewhere *adv* /'sʌmwer/
south *n* /'sʌmwer/
square *n* /skwer/
stone *adj* /stoʊn/
storm *n* /stɔrm/
subway system *n* /'sʌbweɪ 'sɪstəm/
sunrise *n* /'sʌnraɪz/
sunset *n* /'sʌnset/
surrounded *adj* /sə'raʊndəd/
take place *v* /teɪk pleɪs/
tall *adj* /tɔl/
theater *n* /'θiətər/
tourist attraction *n* /'tʊrɪst ə'trækʃn/
tourists *pl n* /'tʊrɪsts/
toy store *n* /tɔɪ stɔr/
traffic circle *n* /'træfɪk 'sərkl/
traffic lights *pl n* /'træfɪk laɪts/
traffic sign *n* /'træfɪk saɪn/
transportation *n* /,trænspər'teɪʃn/
true *adj* /tru/
unique *adj* /yu'nik/
up-to-date *adj* /ʌp tə deɪt/
valley *n* /'væli/
variety *n* /və'raɪəti/
wet *adj* /wet/
woods *pl n* /wʊdz/

UNIT 10

affect *v* /ə'fɛkt/
alike *adj* /ə'laɪk/
below *prep* /bɪ'loʊ/
blond *adj* /blɑnd/
blue *adj* /blu/
bone *n* /boʊn/
boots *pl n* /buts/
brown *adj* /braʊn/
build *v* /bɪld/
can *n* /kæn/
compartment *n* /kəm'pɑrtmənt/
compete *v* /kəm'pit/
conditions *pl n* /kən'dɪʃnz/
couple *n* /'kʌpl/
dark *adj* /dɑrk/
decide *v* /dɪ'saɪd/
detective *n* /dɪ'tɛktɪv/
develop *v* /dɪ'vɛləp/
dress *n* /drɛs/
Earth *n* /ərθ/
effects *pl n* /ɪ'fɛkts/
experiment *n* /ɪk'spɛrəmənt/
fair *adj* /fɛr/
fight *v* /faɪt/
float *v* /floʊt/
glasses *pl n* /glæsɪz/
good-looking *adj* /gʊd lʊkɪŋ/
gravity *n* /'grævəti/
handsome *adj* /'hænsəm/
happen *v* /'hæpən/
hat *n* /hæt/
incredible *adj* /ɪn'krɛdəbl/
instruments *pl n* /'ɪnstrəmənts/
jeans *pl n* /dʒinz/
laboratory *n* /'læbrə,tɔri/
laptop *n* /'læptɑp/
long *adj* /lɔŋ/
message *n* /'mɛsɪdʒ/
muscle *n* /'mʌsl/
noise *n* /nɔɪz/
orbit *n* /'ɔrbət/
origin *n* /'ɔrədʒən/
oxygen *n* /'ɑksɪdʒən/
planet *n* /'plænət/
preparation *n* /,prɛpə'reɪʃn/
pretty *adj* /'prɪti/
purple *adj* /'pərpl/
research *n* /'risərtʃ/
romance novel *n* /roʊ'mæns 'nɑvl/
sauce *n* /sɔs/
scarf *n* /skɑrf/
short *adj* /ʃɔrt/
shorts *pl n* /ʃɔrts/
skirt *n* /skərt/
sneakers *pl n* /'snikərz/
spicy *adj* /'spaɪsi/
spoon *n* /spun/
star *n* /stɑr/
supplies *pl n* /sə'plaɪz/
T-shirt *n* /ti ʃərt/
tasty *adj* /'teɪsti/
trip *n* /trɪp/
truth *n* /truθ/
turn on *v* /tərn ɑn/
twins *pl n* /twɪnz/
universe *n* /'yunə,vərs/
unusual *adj* /ʌn'yuʒuəl/

UNIT 11

adventure *n* /əd'vɛntʃər/
articles *pl n* /'ɑrtɪkl/
carry *v* /'kæri/
challenge *n* /'tʃæləndʒ/
climb *v* /klaɪm/
colorful *adj* /'kʌlərfl/
cruise *n* /kruz/
distance *n* /'dɪstəns/
dream *v* /drim/
drop *v* /drɑp/
due *adj* /du/
fall *v* /fɔl/
freedom *n* /'fridəm/
future *n* /'fyutʃər/
grow up *v* /groʊ ʌp/
hire *v* /'haɪər/
human *adj* /'hyumən/
jacket *n* /'dʒækət/
organization *n* /,ɔrgənə'zeɪʃn/
peaceful *adj* /'pisfl/
picnic *n* /'pɪknɪk/
pyramids *pl n* /'pɪrəmɪdz/
race-car driver *n* /reɪs kɑr'draɪvər/
raise *n* /reɪz/
retire *v* /rɪ'taɪər/
safari *n* /sə'fɑri/
scared *adj* /skɛrd/
sign *n* /saɪn/
smile *v* /smaɪl/
sneeze *v* /sniz/
soon *adv* /sun/
storm *n* /stɔrm/
suitcase *n* /'sutkeɪs/
thunder *n* /'θʌndər/
website *n* /'wɛbsaɪt/

UNIT 12

acres *pl n* /'eɪkərz/
acts *pl n* /ækts/
atmosphere *n* /'ætməs,fɪr/
attend *v* /ə'tɛnd/
Brazil *pl n* /brə'zɪl/
cancel *v* /'kænsl/
carry-on bag *n* /'kæri ɑn bæg/
check in *v* /tʃɛk ɪn/
co-worker *n* /koʊ'wərkər/
crowd *n* /kraʊd/
death *n* /dɛθ/
definite *adj* /'dɛfənət/
departures board *n* /dɪ'pɑrtʃərz bɔrd/
disappointed *adj* /,dɪsə'pɔɪntəd/
Egypt *n* /'idʒɪpt/
ever *adv* /'ɛvər/
express *v* /ɪk'sprɛs/
fail *v* /feɪl/
festival goers *pl n* /'fɛstəvl 'goʊərz/
gate *n* /geɪt/
Italy *n* /'ɪtæli/
knees *pl n* /niz/
luggage *n* /'lʌgɪdʒ/
memories *pl n* /'mɛməriz/
mud *n* /mʌd/
noisy *adj* /'nɔɪzi/
open-air *adj* /'oʊpən ɛr/
packing *n* /'pækɪŋ/
piece *n* /pis/
poem *n* /'poʊəm/
print *v* /prɪnt/
refer to *v* /rɪ'fər tə/
rock concert *n* /rɑk 'kɑnsərt/
round trip *n* /raʊnd trɪp/
savings *pl n* /'seɪvɪŋz/
scuba dive *v* /'skubə ,daɪv/
security *n* /sɪ'kyʊrəti/
slogan *n* /'sloʊgən/
stage *n* /steɪdʒ/
sunshine *n* /'sʌnʃaɪn/
taxi *n* /'tæksi/
tent *n* /tɛnt/
van *n* /væn/
yet *adv* /yɛt/

Pairwork Activities Student A

UNIT 4 *p. 27*

PRACTICE

Location, location, location

1 You want an apartment to rent. You and your partner have two different ads.

Read the information in your ad. Ask and answer questions to find out details about your partner's ad. Make notes in the chart.

Where is the apartment? — It's on ...

Which floor is it on? — It's on the ...

How many bedrooms ...? — There are ...

Is there/Are there a dining room/a yard/stores ...?

Street:
Price:
Rooms:
Location:
Stores and transportation:

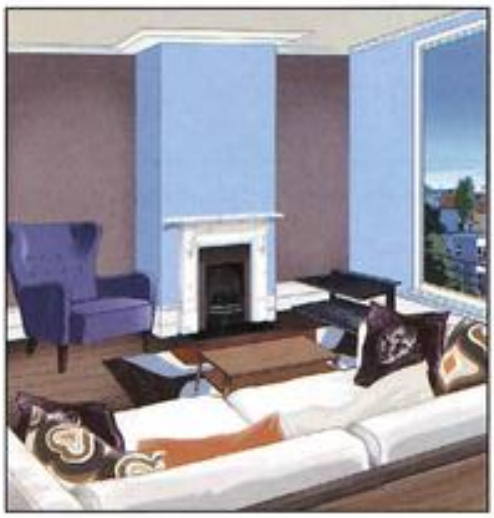
Which apartment do you want to rent? Why?

HEADLAND PROPERTIES

Apartment to rent: Hill Street

$1200 per month

- 3 bedrooms
- 1 bathroom
- Nice living room with views of the town
- Small kitchen



A beautiful apartment on the third floor, only ten minutes from the town center.

Local stores (drugstore, café, convenience store) just five minutes away. With a park across the street. On major bus routes.

PRACTICE

Bill's life

2 You and your partner have different information about Bill Cole's life. Take turns asking and answering questions to find out the missing information to complete the text.

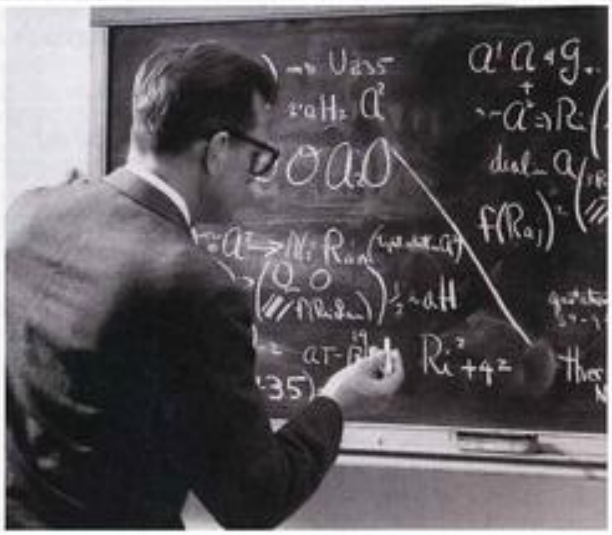
When was Bill born?

He was born in 1941.

Bill Cole was born in New York City in (1) 1941 (*When ...?*). He had two brothers and a sister. His father was a (3) _____ (*What ... his father do?*) and his mother was a house cleaner. They lived in (5) _____ (*Where ...?*), an area of New York. They had an old house with two bedrooms.

Bill went to high school in (7) _____ (*Where ...?*). He didn't do well, and he left school when he was sixteen. He worked in a store until he was 18, and then he (9) _____ (*What ... do?*).

He met his wife at work, and they got married in (11) _____ (*When ...?*). They had two children. Bill left his job and studied (13) _____ (*What ...?*) in college, and worked as a teacher for the rest of his life.



Close your books. Work with your partner. What can you remember about Bill?

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

What's the weather like?

6 Work with a new partner. Ask and answer questions to complete the information about world weather tomorrow.

What's the weather going to be like in Seoul?

Sunny and cold. 45 degrees.

WORLD WEATHER: TOMORROW

S = sunny **C** = cloudy **Fg** = foggy **R** = rainy **Sn** = snowy

City	type	temp
Beijing	C	43°F (6°C)
Boston	____	_____
Cairo	S	64°F (18°C)
Hong Kong	____	_____
Istanbul	Fg	50°F (10°C)
Lima	____	_____
London	R	50°F (10°C)

City	type	temp
Luxor	S	82°F (28°C)
Mexico City	C	76°F (24°C)
Moscow	____	_____
Mumbai	C	84°F (29°C)
Rio de Janeiro	____	_____
Seoul	S	45°F (7°C)
Sydney	____	_____

Which city is going to be the hottest? Which city is going to be the coldest? Which month do you think it is?

Pairwork Activities Student B

UNIT 4 *p. 27*

PRACTICE

Location, location, location

1 You want an apartment to rent. You and your partner have two different ads.

Read the information in your ad. Ask and answer questions to find out details about your partner's ad. Make notes in the chart.

Where is the apartment? — **It's on ...**

Which floor is it on? — **It's on the ...**

How many bedrooms ...? — **There are ...**

Is there/Are there a dining room/a yard/stores ...?

Street:
Price:
Rooms:
Location:
Stores and transportation:

Which apartment do you want to rent? Why?

HEADLAND PROPERTIES

Apartment to rent: Park Road

$1500 per month

- 2 bedrooms
- 2 bathrooms
- Large living room
- Dining room
- Beautiful kitchen with washing machine and dishwasher

A beautiful apartment on the second floor in the center of town, above a convenience store.

Main Street stores and train station only five minutes away.

PRACTICE

Bill's life

2 You and your partner have different information about Bill Cole's life. Take turns asking and answering questions to find out the missing information to complete the text.

How many brothers and sisters did he have?

He had two brothers and a sister.

Bill Cole was born in New York City in 1941. He had (2) __two__ brothers and a sister (*How many ...?*). His father was a butcher, and his mother was a (4) _____ (*What ... his mother do?*). They lived in Brooklyn, an area of New York. They had an (6) _____ house (*What kind of house ... have?*) with two bedrooms.

Bill went to high school in the Bronx. He didn't do well, and he left school when he was (8) _____ (*How old ... when he left school?*). He worked (10) _____ (*Where?*) until he was 18, and then he got a job at a restaurant.

He met his wife at (12) _____ (*Where ...?*), and they got married in 1964. They had (14) _____ children (*How many children ... have?*). Bill left his job and studied math in college, and worked as a teacher for the rest of his life.

Close your books. Work with your partner. What can you remember about Bill?

VOCABULARY AND LISTENING

What's the weather like?

6 Work with a new partner. Ask and answer questions to complete the information about world weather tomorrow.

What's the weather going to be like in Boston?

Foggy. 42 degrees.

WORLD WEATHER: TOMORROW

S = sunny **C** = cloudy **Fg** = foggy **R** = rainy **Sn** = snowy

City	type	temp
Beijing	____	_____
Boston	Fg	42°F (6°C)
Cairo	____	_____
Hong Kong	S	75°F (24°C)
Istanbul	____	_____
Lima	S	74°F (23°C)
London	R	50°F (10°C)

City	type	temp
Luxor	S	82°F (28°C)
Mexico City	____	_____
Moscow	Sn	30°F (-1°C)
Mumbai	____	_____
Rio de Janeiro	R	75°F (24°C)
Seoul	____	_____
Sydney	C	72°F (22°C)

Which city is going to be the hottest? Which city is going to be the coldest? Which month do you think it is?

Extra Materials

UNIT 8 *p. 61*

Shepherd's pie

preparation: 45 mins
cooking: 30 mins
serves four

Ingredients:

2 medium onions, chopped
1.5 lbs ground beef
2 tsp vegetable oil
2 medium carrots, chopped
4 tomatoes
1 tbsp thyme
Salt and black pepper

Method:

Preheat the oven to 190C/375F

1. Chop the onions and carrots.
2. Heat the oil in a large pan. Add the onion and carrot and fry over medium heat for 5 minutes until soft.
3. Add the ground beef and cook for 3 minutes to brown.
4. Add the tomatoes and thyme.
5. Season with salt and pepper.
6. Cover and cook for 30 minutes.

Topping:

4 large potatoes
4 tbsp butter (1/2 stick)
3 tsp milk
1/4 lb Cheddar cheese

Make the topping:

7. Boil the potatoes in water until soft.
8. Mix the potatoes with the butter and milk until smooth.
9. Add the grated cheese. Mix again.
10. Season with salt and pepper.
11. Spoon the meat into an ovenproof dish.
12. Top with the potato and cheese mixture.
13. Bake in the oven for 30 minutes until golden brown.

lb = pound
tsp = teaspoon
tbsp = tablespoon

Irregular Verbs

Base form	Simple Past	Past participle
be	was/were	been
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
can	could	been able
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read /rid/	read /red/	read /red/
ride	rode	ridden
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Verb Patterns

Verb + *-ing*	
like love enjoy hate finish stop	swimming cooking

Verb + *to* + infinitive	
choose decide forget promise need help hope try want would like would love	 to go to work

Verb + *-ing* or *to* + infinitive	
begin start	raining/to rain

Modal auxiliary verbs	
can could will would	 go arrive

Phonetic Symbols

Consonants			
1	/p/	as in	**pen** /pɛn/
2	/b/	as in	**big** /bɪg/
3	/t/	as in	**tea** /ti/
4	/d/	as in	**do** /du/
5	/k/	as in	**cat** /kæt/
6	/g/	as in	**go** /goʊ/
7	/f/	as in	**five** /faɪv/
8	/v/	as in	**very** /ˈvɛri/
9	/s/	as in	**son** /sʌn/
10	/z/	as in	**zoo** /zu/
11	/l/	as in	**live** /lɪv/
12	/m/	as in	**my** /maɪ/
13	/n/	as in	**nine** /naɪn/
14	/h/	as in	**happy** /ˈhæpi/
15	/r/	as in	**red** /rɛd/
16	/y/	as in	**yes** /yɛs/
17	/w/	as in	**want** /wɒnt/
18	/θ/	as in	**thanks** /θæŋks/
19	/ð/	as in	**the** /ðə/
20	/ʃ/	as in	**she** /ʃi/
21	/ʒ/	as in	**television** /ˈtelɪvɪʒn/
22	/tʃ/	as in	**child** /tʃaɪld/
23	/dʒ/	as in	**Japan** /dʒəˈpæn/
24	/ŋ/	as in	**English** /ˈɪŋglɪʃ/

Vowels			
25	/i/	as in	**see** /si/
26	/ɪ/	as in	**his** /hɪz/
27	/ɛ/	as in	**ten** /tɛn/
28	/æ/	as in	**stamp** /stæmp/
29	/ɑ/	as in	**father** /ˈfɑðər/
30	/ɔ/	as in	**saw** /sɔ/
31	/ʊ/	as in	**book** /bʊk/
32	/u/	as in	**you** /yu/
33	/ʌ/	as in	**sun** /sʌn/
34	/ə/	as in	**about** /əˈbaʊt/
35	/eɪ/	as in	**name** /neɪm/
36	/aɪ/	as in	**my** /maɪ/
37	/ɔɪ/	as in	**boy** /bɔɪ/
38	/aʊ/	as in	**how** /haʊ/
39	/oʊ/	as in	**go** /goʊ/
40	/ər/	as in	**bird** /bərd/
41	/ɪr/	as in	**near** /nɪr/
42	/ɛr/	as in	**hair** /hɛr/
43	/ar/	as in	**car** /kar/
44	/ɔr/	as in	**more** /mɔr/
45	/ʊr/	as in	**tour** /tʊr/

Notes

Notes

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

198 Madison Avenue
New York, NY 10016 USA

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP,
United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2015

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

First published in 2015
2019 2018 2017 2016 2015
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials contained in any third party website referenced in this work

ISBN: 978 0 19 472566 8
STUDENT BOOK (PACK COMPONENT)
ISBN: 978 0 19 472565 1
STUDENT BOOK WITH OXFORD ONLINE SKILLS PROGRAM (PACK)
ISBN: 978 0 19 472584 2
OXFORD ONLINE SKILLS PROGRAM (PACK COMPONENT)
ISBN: 978 0 19 472580 4
STUDENT BOOK ACCESS CARD (PACK COMPONENT)

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material: p.11 and 101 information about Claudia Luke reproduced by kind permission of Claudia Luke; p.22 adapted from "My Perfect Weekend: Jamie Cullum" by Sylvia Roger, Telegraph.co.uk, 29 April 2006, © Telegraph Media Group Limited 2006. Reproduced by permission; p.22 audio extract of *Twenty Something* by Jamie Cullum is reproduced by kind permission of Universal Music Operations Limited; p.23 adapted from "My Perfect Weekend: Bobbi Brown" by Olivia Parker, 11 March 2013, Telegraph.co.uk © Telegraph Media Group Limited 2013, Reproduced by permission; p.38 adapted from "Relative Values: Nicola Benedetti and her father, Gio" by Beverly D'Silva, *The Sunday Times Magazine*, 30 September 2007. © Beverley D'Silva/The Sunday Times Magazine/nisyndication.com. Reproduced by permission. p.86 information about Zoë Romano reproduced by kind permission of Zoë Romano

Additional information: p.14 *Bahar Ali* The direct quotations in this story have been adapted to assist understanding; p.44 This interview with Ben Way is fictitious and is based on factual information from a number of sources; p.54 1909 – *The first air journey* The direct quotations in this story have been adapted to assist understanding.

Illustrations by: SW Infographics, p.64, p.72 / 73, p.88; Jonathan Burton, p.56; Gill Button p.2, p.5, p.32, p.40, p.75, p.84, p.92, p.96; Jonathan Keegan p.48, p.58; Debbie Powell p.89; Gavin Reece p.16, p.27, p.46/47, p.64/65, p.76, p.106, p.145, p.148.

Commissioned photography by: Gareth Boden pp.2 (Bill & receptionist); 3 (Tim); 4 (all photos Nick and family); 6 (My Boston Family x 3; My School x 2; Boston - Girl wearing scarf); 11 (Amanda), 17 (clock on sky, clock on grass, clock on pebbles); 18/19 (Claire); 25 (all); 26 (Josie & Emily); 28/29 (Josie & Emily shopping); 58 (various food items); 59/60 (Evan & Nick); 63 (sandwich); 64 (various items); 74 (Tony & Nina, Kate & Tim); 81 (boy & drinks machine); 90 (Lara & Kyle); 92 (Lara & Mel); 93 (Lara); 97 (Lara & Mel); 108 (Ivan in kitchen). Models supplied by Elliott Brown Agency. The publisher would like to thank the following for their help with locations: Barcelo Hotel; Blacks Leisure Group plc.; Brancaccio; David Lloyd Leisure Ltd.; First Great Western; James C. Penny Estate Agents; The Oxford Boot Store; Portabello Restaurant; Quod Brasserie; Radmila Nowakowic; Ruth Crofton-Briggs; The Albion Beatnik Bookshop; The Oxford English Centre; The Regal; University of Oxford Botanic Garden & Harcourt Arboretum

We would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce the following photographs: Cover: Paul Harizan/Getty Images, Ralf Hiemisch/Fotop/Corbis; global - antonyspencer/iStockphoto; p2 Viktoriya Yatskina/iStockphoto (background); p2 Eric Audras/Photoalto/Corbis UK Ltd. (handshake); p3 Photodisc/Oxford University Press (Chicago); p3 Tony Alan Anderson/Superstock/Corbis UK Ltd. (Sofia); p3 Robert Harding Picture Library Ltd/Alamy (Santiago); p5 Dolce Vita/Shutterstock; p6 Digital Vision/Oxford University Press (skyscrapers); p6 Stephen Orsillo/Fotolia (old state house); p6 LOOK Die Bildagentur der Fotografen GmbH/Alamy (brownstone house); p6 Vernon Doucette/2010/Boston University Photography (Boston University); p6 Marianne A. Campologis/Alamy (market); p7 2013 - The Boston Globe/Getty Images; p8 Digital Vision/Oxford University Press (father); p8 Sheryl Griffin/iStockphoto (mother); p8 Prisma/Superstock Ltd. (brother); p8 Catchlight Visual Services/Alamy (sister); p8 Dougal Waters/Getty Images (wife); p8 Fuse/Getty Images (daughter); p8 John-Patrick Morarescu/Westend61/Oxford University Press (Joseph); p8 Jim Esposito Photography L.L.C./Getty Images (baby); p8 REB Images/Getty Images (grandmother); p8 A-Digit/iStockphoto (silhouette); p9 Sean Locke/iStockphoto (bye); p9 Digital Vision/Oxford University Press (ordering); p9 Henrik Sorensen/Getty Images (shopping); p9 Blend Images/Hill Street Studios/Getty Images (handshake); p9 Caroline von Tuempling/Comica/Getty Images (computer); p9 Odilon Dimier/Photoalto/Corbis UK Ltd. (kiss); p10 Digital Vision/Getty Images (Andrew); p10 Ace Stock Limited/Alamy (oil rig); p10/11 Robert Fried/Alamy; p11 Jack Goldfarb/Design Pics Inc/Getty Images (snake); p11 Dr. Claudia Luke/Claudia Luke, Sonoma State University (claudia); p12 Pascal Le Segretain/Getty Images (David Gaetta); p12 Diane Diederich/iStockphoto (ballet shoes); p12 akira/iStockphoto (headphones); p12 Chiaki Yasukawa (ballet dancer); p13 Blend Images/Rolf Bruderer/Oxford University Press (Charlotte); p13 Chris Windsor/Stone/Getty Images (photograph); p14/15 Samrat Chakraborti/Anant Media Private Limited; p15 Samrat Chakraborti/Anant Media Private Limited (Babar Ali); p15 Samrat Chakraborti/Anant Media Private Limited (children studying); p17 Carlos Alvarez/Stockphoto (wall clock); p17 Photodisc/Oxford University Press (clouds); p18 Ceren Evin Erkan/Stockphoto; p20 Photodisc/Oxford University Press (cycling); p20 Ace Stock Limited/Alamy (jogging); p20 Carlos Spottorno/Taxi/Getty Images (cooking); p21 Oneky/Alain Chederros/Oxford University Press (cards); p21 Image Source/Alamy (shopping); p21 Kuttig - People/Alamy (cinema); p21 Amana Images Inc./Alamy (golf); p21 Chris Stock Photography/Alamy (reading); p21 Henry Georgi/Corbis UK Ltd. (windsurfing); p21 Image Source/Corbis UK Ltd. (watching TV); p21 Sipa Press/Rex Features (swimming); p21 Creatas/Oxford University Press (tennis); p21 Owen Robson/Benelux press/Corbis UK Ltd. (skiing); p21 Stephen Dorey/Alamy (sailing); p21 Kodryashka/iStockphoto (trees); p21 Calalmage/Paul Bradbury/Getty Images (dancing); p21 imageBROKER/Alamy (computer game); p21 Rob Lewine/Oxford University Press (weightlifting); p22 Marco Prosch/Getty Images; p23 Eliot/Big Pictures (UK) Ltd (Sophie and Jamie); p23 Doubleo/Lebrecht Music & Arts/Corbis UK Ltd. (nightclub); p23 Universal Music (album cover); p23 Fresh Food Images/Getty Images (chicken); p23 Getty Images (Bobbi Brown); p23 Getty Images (house); p23 Associated Press Contributors/Press Association Images (Bobbi and Steven); p23 Robert Harding Picture Library Ltd/Alamy (beach); p23 John Kelly/Alamy (salad); p24 Fancy/Klaus Tiedge/Oxford University Press (Dr Hall); p24 Brian Lawrence/Photographer's Choice/Getty Images (commuter); p27 Johnny Boschler Photography (kitchen); p27 Saul Hope-Ross/Photoshot (bedroom); p27 Roger T. Schmidt/Photographer's Choice/Getty Images (livingroom); p28 David Lees/Photodisc/Getty Images; p28/29 Jack Hollingsworth/Photodisc/Getty Images; p29 Dex Image/Getty Images; p30 Dave Etheridge-Barnes/Getty Images; p30/31 Dirck Halstead/Time Life Pictures/Getty Images; p31 North Wind Picture Archives/Alamy (drawing); p31 Dave Etheridge-Barnes/Getty Images (crowd); p33 Randy Faris/Corbis UK Ltd. (one); p33 Diane Collins and Jordan Hollender/Getty Images (ninety four); p33 Tooga/Getty Images (twenty one); p33 Brian Cruickshank/Getty Images (forty five); p33 Jason Edwards/National Geographic/Getty Images (215); p33 age fotostock/Superstock Ltd. (thirty six); p33 age fotostock/Superstock Ltd. (nineteen); p33 George Ostertag/Superstock Ltd. (171); p33 Glowimages Cuisine/Superstock Ltd. (ninety one); p34 c.Warner Br/Everett/Rex Features (Superman); p34 Oksana Struk/Photodisc/Getty Images (boy); p34/35 Panoramic Images/Getty Images; p35 Bob Carey/Photodisc/Getty Images; p36 David Clifford/Aurora/Getty Images (woman); p36 Don Mason/Blend Images/Getty Images (child); p37 Apic/Hulton Archive/Getty Images (Picasso); p37 Iris Wang (Ryan Wang); p37 Aelita Andre Art/Aelita Andre Art (Aelita Andre); p37 Ken Welsh / Alamy (Malaga, Spain); p38 Wattie Cheung/Camera Press; p39 Car Photo Library (car); p39 Howard Kingsnorth/Stone/Getty Images (violin); p39 David Cheskin/Press Association Images (Giovanni Benedetti with daughters); p39 PA WIRE/Press Association Images (CBI); p41 Colorblind Images/Getty Images (barista); p41 Andersen Ross/Getty Images (crutches); p41 Jupiterimages / Getty Images (woman); p41 Getty Images (businesspeople); p42 ENT/Alamy; p43 Sharil Zhumatov/Reuters/Corbis UK Ltd. (space suit); p43 Canadian Press/Rex Features (Cirque du Soleil); p44 Toast PR; p45 Toast PR; p49 Kutay Tanir/Stockphoto; p50 Mary Evans Picture Library (Ford); p50 Scherl/SZ Photo/Mary Evans Picture Library (Einstein); p50 David Redfern/Redferns/Getty Images (Beatles); p50 NASA (astronaut); p51 Camille Tokerud/Getty Images (Tommy and Bill); p51 Ina Peters/iStockphoto (television); p51 Getty Images (beach); p51 SuperStock / SuperStock/Superstock Ltd. (old car); p51 NBC Universal, Inc./Getty Images (Howdy Doody); p51 Archie Comic Publications/Archie Comics (comic); p52 Joseph Schwartz/Corbis UK Ltd.; p53 Blend Images/Getty Images (classroom); p53 Getty Images (children); p53 Getty Images (Angela); p53 B.A.E. Inc./Alamy (glass); p54 Bettmann/Corbis UK Ltd. (plane); p54 Kennedy Space Center/NASA (astronaut); p54 NASA (rocket); p55 Bettmann/Corbis UK Ltd. (Louis Blériot); p55 Kennedy Space Center/NASA (astronauts); p55 ESA/Hubble Heritage Team/STScI/AURA/NASA (stars); p55/59 Paul Paladin/Alamy; p57 totalphoto/Alamy (valentine); p57 Jim Cummins/Getty Images (mother's day); p57 Peter Danckley/Getty Images (halloween); p57 Stockdisc/White/Getty Images (birthday); p57 Reggie Casagrande/Workbook Stock/Getty Images (new year); p57 Picturebank/Alamy (bride); p57 Bochkarev Photography/Shutterstock (turkey); p57 Sean Locke Photography/Shutterstock (graduation); p58 Oleksiy Mark/Shutterstock (cat); p58 Jungverylucky/Fotolia (french fries); p60 Joe Gough/Shutterstock; p62 Classic Image/Alamy; p63 Cultura/Oxford University Press (John); p63 Tanya Constantine/Oxford University Press (Dylan); p63 Reproduced with the kind permission of King Features, a division of Hearst Holdings, Inc./Allsorts Licensing (Dagwood); p63 Design Pics Inc./Alamy (child); p63 Dragon Images/Oxford University Press (Linh); p63 jasmonoino/Getty Images (Larissa); p63 Image Source/Oxford University Press (Kumiko); p64 koeji/Shutterstock (bulb); p64 Photodisc/Oxford University Press (tulips); p64 Kelvin Wong/Shutterstock (phone case); p64 Maxx Studio/Shutterstock (newspaper); p64 Konstantin Faraktinov/Shutterstock (shampoo); p66 Bavaria/Getty Images (Eiffel Tower); p66 dbimages/Alamy (NYC); p67 Loic Venance/AFP/Getty Images (Metro); p67 Bruno De Hogues/Photographer's Choice/Getty Images (cafe); p67 Andrew F. Kazmierski/Shutterstock (snow); p67 Paul Thomas/Getty Images (doorman); p68 Alex Segre/Alamy; p69 Karan Kapoor/Cultura/Getty Images (Chantal); p69 Getty Images (High Line park); p70 Patrick Batchelder/Alamy (Tokyo); p70 Image Source/Alamy (Lourdes); p70 Akira Kaede/Getty Images (temple); p70 Kazuhiro Tanda/Getty Images (Malilio); p70 dbimages/Alamy (Vimala); p70 Double/A.collection/Getty Images (texture); p71 Dinodia Images/Alamy (Mumbai); p71 Peter Adams Photography Ltd/Alamy (Mexico City); p71 Hekli Kalyani/iStockphoto (texture); p71 Robert Harding Picture Library Ltd/Alamy (taxi); p75 PureStock/Getty Images; p77 Radius Images/Oxford University Press (computer); p77 Asia Images/Getty Images (shopping); p77 Glowimages/Corbis UK Ltd. (eating); p77 Elyse Lewin/Brand X Pictures/Getty Images (bath); p78 NASA; p78/79 NASA (ISS); p78/79 Sergii Tsololo/iStockphoto (starburst); p79 NASA (space walk); p79 NASA (chess); p79 NASA (group); p80 Mary Ellen McQuay/Getty Images (Cheryl); p80 Yuri Arcurs/Shutterstock (Mark); p80 Lane Oatey/Getty Images (Tanya); p80 Image Source/Getty Images (Matt and John); p80 Jupiterimages/Getty Images (Stephanie); p80 Filep Via/Radius Images/Getty Images (Amy); p80 Tony Garcia/Digital Vision/Getty Images (Grace); p80 Jupiterimages/Getty Images (Ben); p81 Redlink/Corbis UK Ltd. (marriage); p81 PhotoAlto/Alix Minde/Getty Images (cinema); p81 Christoph & Friends/Das Fotoarchiv/Alamy (party); p81 Roy Mcmahon/Corbis UK Ltd. (bye); p81 Radius Images/Getty Images (garage); p81 Tommy Hanratty/Corbis UK Ltd. (shop assistant); p82 Larry Lilac/Alamy (horse); p 81 Image Source / Getty Images (phone call); p82 ImageState/Alamy (pay rise); p82 Design Pics/Ron Nickel/Getty Images (kids); p82 Dorian Weber/age fotostock/Getty Images (relax); p82 Image Source/Alamy (arrive); p82 Jeremy Mayes/Stockphoto (India); p83 Chris Tobin/Getty Images (grow up); p83 Colorblind Images/Getty Images (lesson); p84 Paul Souders/Corbis UK Ltd. (tent); p84 Momentik - Eastcott/Corbis UK Ltd. (steam); p84 Louis-Marie Preau/Hemis/Corbis UK Ltd. (River); p84 Tim Wimborne/Reuters/Corbis UK Ltd. (Uluru); p84 Yann Arthus-Bertrand/Corbis UK Ltd. (snow); p84 Philip Lee Harvey / Culture Limited/Superstock Ltd. (floating village); p85 Jamie Grill/Getty Images (map); p85 Theo Allofs/Corbis UK Ltd. (tiger); p85 Bob Krist/Corbis UK Ltd. (Machu Picchu); p85 Jacques Sierpinski/Hemis/Corbis UK Ltd. (pyramids); p86 Alexander Kreher/Alexander Kreher Photo & Film; p87 Alexander Kreher/Alexander Kreher Photo & Film (snow); p87 Alexander Kreher/Alexander Kreher Photo & Film (desert); p88 Stockbyte/Oxford University Press (weather girl); p88 MacDaddy/Vecteezy.com (map); p90 EyeWire/Oxford University Press (Australia); p90 Matt Trommer/Stockphoto (Brazil); p90 EyeWire/Oxford University Press (China); p90 Yuriy Kirsanov/Stockphoto (Egypt); p90 visual7/Stockphoto (Italy); p90 visual7/Stockphoto (Japan); p90 Yuriy Kirsanov/Stockphoto (Switzerland); p90 Photodisc/Oxford University Press (USA); p90 Corbis/Oxford University Press (Argentina); p90 Imagesol/Fotolia (Mexico); p90 Les Cunliffe/Fotolia (Chile); p90 Maeques/Shutterstock (South Korea); p91 geopaul/iStockphoto (globe); p91 Getty Images (South America); p92 Imageegami/iStockphoto; p94 Red Chopsticks/Oxford University Press (Dave); p94 Stockbyte/Oxford University Press (Marina); p94 photolibrary.com/Oxford University Press (Inti); p94 photolibrary.com/Oxford University Press (Len); p94 Ian Gavan/Getty Images (singer); p94 Matt Cardy/Getty Images (Glastonbury at night); p94 Bill Westmacott/Alamy (mod); p95 LUKE MACGREGOR/Reuters/Corbis; p95 Steve Speller/Alamy; p97 Chris Pancewicz/Alamy; p100 Franck Boston/Stockphoto; p101 Claudia Luke/Claudia Luke, Sonoma State University (Claudia Luke and student); p101 Kochneva Tetyana/Shutterstock (bicycles); p102 Dougal Waters/Getty Images (exercise); p102 Dougal Waters/Getty Images (fitness); p103 Anna Emilia Lundgren/Getty Images; p104 Echo/Getty Images (Carl); p104 Richard Ellis/Alamy (Charleston); p105 Leonard Mc Lane/Getty Images (Gabriella); p105 Floortje/Stockphoto (thread); p105 Toast PR (Ben Way); p108 Dmitriy Shironosov/Stockphoto; p108/109 Marianna Massey/Getty Images; p110 Grant Faint/Getty Images; p111 Alexa Miller/Getty Images; p112 Ingolf Pompe 25/Alamy; p113 Philip Haynes/Flickr/Getty Images; p146 SuperStock/Getty Images; p149 Archive Holdings Inc./Getty Images; p151 Joe Gough/Shutterstock.

AMERICAN Headway

Proven success beyond the classroom

Headway and its award-winning authors, Liz and John Soars, have helped 100 million students in over 127 countries learn English. Teachers around the world have told us that Headway helps students succeed in and beyond the classroom. Read their stories at www.oup.com/elt/provensuccess.

NEW to the Third Edition

More conversation – helps students accelerate their progress in speaking and prepare for high-stakes tests

Independent learning – online skill development and self-assessment lets students manage their own learning

iTools – dynamic classroom presentation software provides teachers with audio, video, and additional resources

Testing program – includes online test-preparation lessons and a complete assessment package

FOR STUDENTS

- Student Book with Oxford Online Skills Program
- Workbook with iChecker Online Self-Assessment
- Multi-Pack: Student Book/Workbook Split Edition with Online Skills and iChecker

FOR TEACHERS

- Teacher's Resource Book with Testing Program
- iTools Classroom Presentation Software
- Online Classroom Management
- Class Audio CDs

Oxford Online Skills Program: Skills practice for reading, writing, listening, and speaking plus Online Classroom Management for teachers

SHAPING learning TOGETHER

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

CEFR B1 A2 A1

ISBN 978-0-19-472565-1
9 780194 725651